

This is an author version of the contribution published in  
Dissertationes Mathematicae

The final publication is available at  
<https://www.impan.pl/shop/en/publication/transaction/download/product/113209>  
doi:10.4064/dm791-2-2019

# Entropy on normed semigroups

## (Towards a unifying approach to entropy)

Dikran Dikranjan

Anna Giordano Bruno

### Abstract

We present a unifying approach to the study of entropies in mathematics, such as measure entropy, various forms of topological entropy, several notions of algebraic entropy, and two forms of set-theoretic entropy. We take into account only discrete dynamical systems, that is, pairs  $(X, \phi)$ , where  $X$  is the underlying space (e.g., a probability space, a compact topological space, a group, a set) and  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  is a transformation of  $X$  (e.g., a measure preserving transformation, a continuous selfmap, a group homomorphism, a selfmap). We see entropies as functions  $h : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$ , associating to each flow  $(X, \phi)$  of a category  $\mathfrak{X}$  either a non-negative real number or  $\infty$ .

First, we introduce the notion of semigroup entropy  $h_{\mathfrak{S}} : \mathfrak{S} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$ , which is a numerical invariant attached to endomorphisms of the category  $\mathfrak{S}$  of normed semigroups. Then, for a functor  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$  from any specific category  $\mathfrak{X}$  to  $\mathfrak{S}$ , we define the functorial entropy  $\mathbf{h}_F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  as the composition  $h_{\mathfrak{S}} \circ F$ , that is,  $\mathbf{h}_F(\phi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F\phi)$  for any endomorphism  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathfrak{X}$ . Clearly,  $\mathbf{h}_F$  inherits many of the properties of  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}$ , depending also on the functor  $F$ . Motivated by this aspect, we study in detail the properties of  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}$ .

Such a general scheme, using elementary category theory, permits one to obtain many relevant known entropies as functorial entropies  $\mathbf{h}_F$ , for appropriately chosen categories  $\mathfrak{X}$  and functors  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$ . All of the above mentioned entropies are functorial. Furthermore, we exploit our scheme to elaborate a common approach to establish the properties shared by those entropies that we find as functorial entropies, pointing out their common nature. We give also a detailed description of the limits of our approach, namely entropies which cannot be covered.

Finally, we discuss and deeply analyze the relations between pairs of entropies through the looking glass of our unifying approach. To this end we first formalize the notion of Bridge Theorem between two entropies  $h_1 : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  and  $h_2 : \mathfrak{X}_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  with respect to a functor  $\varepsilon : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}_2$ , taking inspiration from the known relation between the topological and the algebraic entropy via the Pontryagin duality functor. Then, for pairs of functorial entropies we use the above scheme to introduce the notion and the related scheme of Strong Bridge Theorem. It allows us to shelter various relations between pairs of entropies under the same umbrella (e.g., the above mentioned connection of the topological and the algebraic entropy, as well as their relation with the set-theoretic entropy).

*Keywords:* entropy, semigroup, semilattice, normed semigroup, semigroup entropy, bridge theorem, algebraic entropy, topological entropy, measure entropy, frame entropy, set-theoretic entropy, duality.

*2010 Mathematics Subject Classification:* 16B50, 20M15, 20K30, 20F65, 22D05, 22D35, 22D40, 28D20, 37A35, 37B40, 54C70, 54H11, 55U30.

The authors are supported by the project PRID Topological, Categorical and Dynamical Methods in Algebra (DMIF - University of Udine). This work was partially supported by the “National Group for Algebraic and Geometric Structures, and their Applications” (GNSAGA - INdAM).

Dikran Dikranjan  
Dipartimento di Scienze Matematiche, Informatiche e Fisiche  
Università degli Studi di Udine  
Via delle Scienze 206, 33100 Udine (Italy)  
E-mail: dikran.dikranjan@uniud.it

Anna Giordano Bruno  
Dipartimento di Scienze Matematiche, Informatiche e Fisiche  
Università degli Studi di Udine  
Via delle Scienze 206, 33100 Udine (Italy)  
E-mail: anna.giordanobruno@uniud.it

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1	Historical background . . . . .	3
1.2	The general scheme . . . . .	3
1.3	Bridge Theorem . . . . .	6
1.4	The limits of the general scheme . . . . .	7
1.5	Final remarks . . . . .	7
<b>2</b>	<b>The category <math>\mathfrak{S}</math> of normed semigroups</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1	Definition and examples . . . . .	9
2.2	Normed preordered semigroups and normed semilattices . . . . .	10
<b>3</b>	<b>The semigroup entropy</b>	<b>11</b>
3.1	Definition . . . . .	11
3.2	Entropy in $\mathfrak{S}$ . . . . .	12
3.3	Entropy in $\mathfrak{S}^\dagger$ . . . . .	15
3.4	Entropy in $\mathfrak{M}$ . . . . .	16
3.5	Alternatives for the definition of trajectories . . . . .	17
<b>4</b>	<b>The functorial entropy</b>	<b>18</b>
4.1	Definition and basic properties . . . . .	18
4.2	Shifts . . . . .	21
<b>5</b>	<b>Obtaining known dynamical invariants</b>	<b>24</b>
5.1	Set-theoretic entropy . . . . .	24
5.2	Topological entropy for compact spaces . . . . .	26
5.3	Entropy for topological spaces and entropy for frames . . . . .	28
5.4	Measure entropy . . . . .	29
5.5	Algebraic entropy . . . . .	30
5.6	Algebraic $i$ -entropy . . . . .	33
5.7	Adjoint algebraic entropy . . . . .	34
5.8	Topological entropy for linearly topologized precompact groups . . . . .	35
5.9	Algebraic and topological entropy for vector spaces . . . . .	36
<b>6</b>	<b>Bridge Theorems</b>	<b>37</b>
6.1	Uniform and weak isomorphisms in $\mathfrak{S}^*$ . . . . .	37
6.2	General scheme . . . . .	38
6.3	Preservation of entropy along (co)reflections and forgetful functors . . . . .	40
6.4	Bridge Theorems for the algebraic entropy and the topological entropy . . . . .	41
6.5	Bridge Theorems for the set-theoretic entropy . . . . .	43
6.5.1	Topological entropy and backward generalized shifts . . . . .	43
6.5.2	Algebraic entropy and forward generalized shifts . . . . .	46
<b>7</b>	<b>Topological and algebraic entropy in locally compact groups</b>	<b>47</b>

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Historical background

The first notion of entropy in mathematics was the measure entropy  $h_{mes}$  for measure preserving transformations of probability spaces, studied by Kolmogorov [82] and Sinai [103] in ergodic theory. Analogously, Adler, Konheim and McAndrew [1] introduced the topological entropy  $h_{top}$  for continuous selfmaps of compact spaces by using open covers. Later, Hofer [76] proposed a quite natural extension  $h_{fin-top}$  of the topological entropy  $h_{top}$  to continuous selfmaps of arbitrary topological spaces, by simply replacing the open covers by finite open covers.

Another notion of topological entropy  $h_B$  for uniformly continuous selfmaps of metric spaces was given by Bowen [13] and Dinaburg [51]; it coincides with  $h_{top}$  on compact metric spaces. Later on, Hood [78] extended Bowen-Dinaburg's entropy to uniformly continuous selfmaps of uniform spaces. This notion of entropy is sometimes called uniform entropy, and it coincides with the topological entropy in the compact case, when the given compact topological space is endowed with the unique uniformity compatible with the topology (see [47, 50] for more detail). In particular, this topological entropy can be studied for continuous endomorphisms of topological groups.

Indeed, the topological entropy was thoroughly studied for continuous endomorphisms of compact groups, starting from the work of Yuzvinski [117], where the so-called Addition Theorem was proved, and also the so-called Yuzvinski's formula relating the topological entropy with the Mahler measure. Moreover, a Uniqueness Theorem is available in this case due to Stoyanov [105]. Recently, the topological entropy was studied for totally disconnected locally compact groups in [59, 67], and for totally bounded abelian groups in [49].

Entropy was taken to Algebraic Dynamics by Adler, Konheim and McAndrew [1] and by Weiss [113]; they studied the algebraic entropy  $ent$  for endomorphisms of torsion abelian groups, which was further investigated in [45], where in particular an Addition Theorem and a Uniqueness Theorem were provided. Then Peters [92] defined its extension  $h_{alg}$  to automorphisms of abelian groups; finally in [33, 35, 36, 40] the algebraic entropy  $h_{alg}$  for group endomorphisms was introduced in general, developing all its fundamental properties, with the Addition Theorem playing a crucial role among them. In particular, the relation of the algebraic entropy with Lehmer's problem from number theory was pointed out, by means of the so-called algebraic Yuzvinski's formula (see [65, 66]).

Peters [93] gave a further generalization of his notion of entropy  $h_{alg}$  for continuous automorphisms of locally compact abelian groups, which was recently extended by Virili [109] to continuous endomorphisms; the commutativity can be removed as noted in [35]. The recent paper [61] is dedicated to the study of the algebraic entropy for a class of locally compact not necessarily abelian groups where the Addition Theorem is available.

As a dual notion of the algebraic entropy  $ent$ , the adjoint algebraic entropy  $ent^*$  for group endomorphisms was investigated in [41] (see also [68, 101]), and its topological version in [58]. A notion of algebraic entropy for module endomorphisms was introduced in [100], namely, for  $i$  an invariant of a module category the algebraic  $i$ -entropy  $ent_i$  for module endomorphisms. This entropy was deeply investigated in case  $i$  is a length function, when the Addition Theorem holds (see [96, 97]). The adjoint version of the algebraic  $i$ -entropy was studied in [108]. In particular, the algebraic dimension entropy  $ent_{dim}$  for discrete vector spaces was thoroughly analyzed in [60], and carried to locally linearly compact vector spaces in [20]. A topological dimension entropy  $ent_{dim}^*$  was studied for locally linearly compact vector spaces in [21].

Finally, one can find in [4] and [35] two mutually "dual" notions of entropy for selfmaps of sets, namely the covariant set-theoretic entropy  $\mathfrak{h}$  and the contravariant set-theoretic entropy  $\mathfrak{h}^*$ .

We briefly mention here that nowadays notions of entropy are studied also in much more general contexts, namely for (semi)group actions, for example, the measure entropy and the topological entropy for amenable group actions (e.g., see [80, 81, 86, 90, 91, 104]; analogues of the Addition Theorem and the Yuzvinski's formula can be found in [23, 30, 84, 86, 105]). The algebraic entropy for amenable group actions was recently considered in [85, 107, 111]. For amenable semigroup actions, the measure entropy and the topological entropy were introduced in [22] and the algebraic entropy in [32]. For a survey on entropy in the very general case of sofic groups see [114] (see also [16, 17, 79]). In another direction, entropy was extended to actions of finitely generated semigroups using regular systems in [77] (see also [8, 56] and [9, 10]).

## 1.2 The general scheme

We list here all the entropies that we take into account:

- the covariant set-theoretic entropy  $\mathfrak{h}$  and the contravariant set-theoretic entropy  $\mathfrak{h}^*$  (see §5.1);
- the topological entropy  $h_{top}$  for continuous selfmaps of compact spaces (see §5.2) or for continuous endomorphisms of locally compact groups (see §7);
- the topological entropy  $h_{fin-top}$  for continuous selfmaps of topological spaces (see §5.3 and §5.8);
- the frame entropy  $h_{fr}$  for endomorphisms of frames (see §5.3);
- the measure entropy  $h_{mes}$  for measure preserving transformations of probability spaces (see §5.4);
- the algebraic entropy  $ent$  for endomorphisms of torsion abelian groups (see §5.5);
- the algebraic entropy  $h_{alg}$  for group endomorphisms (see §5.5) and for continuous endomorphisms of locally compact groups (see §7);
- the algebraic  $i$ -entropy  $ent_i$  for endomorphisms of modules (see §5.6);
- the adjoint algebraic entropy  $ent^*$  for group endomorphisms (see §5.7);
- the algebraic dimension entropy  $ent_{dim}$  for discrete vector spaces (see §5.9);
- the topological dimension entropy  $ent_{dim}^*$  for linearly compact vector spaces (see §5.9).

Each of the above listed entropies has its specific definition, usually given by a limit computed on some “trajectories” and then by taking the supremum of these quantities (we will see their definitions explicitly in §5). Their basic properties are very similar, but the proofs in the literature take into account the particular features of the specific case each time. Since it appears that all these definitions and basic properties share a lot of common features, the aim of our approach is to “unify” them under a general scheme, pointing out their common nature. To this end we need some easy tools from category theory.

Let  $\mathfrak{X}$  be a category. A *flow* of  $\mathfrak{X}$  is a pair  $(X, \phi)$ , where  $X$  is an object and  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  is an endomorphism in  $\mathfrak{X}$ . A morphism between two flows  $(X, \phi)$  and  $(Y, \psi)$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$  is a morphism  $\alpha : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\phi} & X \\ \alpha \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha \\ Y & \xrightarrow{\psi} & Y. \end{array}$$

commutes. This defines the category  $\mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{X}}$  of flows of  $\mathfrak{X}$ .

If  $\alpha$  is an epimorphism we say that  $(Y, \psi)$  is a *factor* of  $(X, \phi)$ , if  $\alpha$  is a monomorphism then  $(X, \phi)$  is a *subflow* of  $(Y, \psi)$ , and if  $\alpha$  is an isomorphism we say that the flows  $(X, \phi)$  and  $(Y, \psi)$  are *isomorphic* and the morphisms  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are *conjugate*.

**Example 1.1.** Given a commutative ring  $R$  and letting  $\mathfrak{X}$  be the category  $\mathbf{Mod}_R$  of  $R$ -modules, the category  $\mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{X}}$  is equivalent to the category  $\mathbf{Mod}_{R[X]}$  of modules over the ring of polynomials  $R[X]$  with coefficients in  $R$ .

Let  $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} = \{r \in \mathbb{R} : r \geq 0\}$  and  $\mathbb{R}_+ = \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \cup \{\infty\}$ . To classify flows of a category  $\mathfrak{X}$  up to isomorphisms one can use  $\mathbb{R}_+$ -valued invariants, that is, functions

$$h : \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{X}} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+, \quad (1.1)$$

which take the same values on isomorphic flows. We generally refer to such invariants as *entropies* or *entropy functions* of  $\mathfrak{X}$ . For simplicity and with some abuse of notation, we adopt the following

**Convention 1.2.** If  $\mathfrak{X}$  is a category and  $h$  an entropy of  $\mathfrak{X}$  we write (with some abuse of notation)

$$h : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$$

in place of  $h : \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{X}} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  as in (1.1).

In order to pursue our unifying aim, in §3 we introduce a general notion of *semigroup entropy*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}^*} : \mathfrak{S}^* \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$$

on the category  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  of normed semigroups and semigroup homomorphisms.

Most of the time we are involved with the non-full subcategory  $\mathfrak{S}$  of  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  consisting of normed semigroups and contractive semigroup homomorphisms; in this case we denote the semigroup entropy by

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}} : \mathfrak{S} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+.$$

The next step towards the main aim is done in §4, where for a category  $\mathfrak{X}$  and a functor  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$  (respectively,  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}^*$ ), the *functorial entropy*  $\mathbf{h}_F$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$  is defined to be

$$\mathbf{h}_F = h_{\mathfrak{S}} \circ F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$$

(respectively,  $\mathbf{h}_F = h_{\mathfrak{S}^*} \circ F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$ ), as described by the following diagram.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{X} & \xrightarrow{h = \mathbf{h}_F} & \mathbb{R}_+ \\ \downarrow F & & \uparrow h_{\mathfrak{S}} \\ \mathfrak{S} & \xrightarrow{h_{\mathfrak{S}}} & \mathbb{R}_+ \end{array} \quad (1.2)$$

Finally, in §5 and in §7 all specific entropies listed above are obtained in our scheme as functorial entropies.

For every specific functor  $F$  that we consider, an order is available on the normed semigroup in the target of  $F$ , and the norm of the semigroup is monotone with respect to this order; this circumstance is exploited in the section dealing with the Bridge Theorem, in order to introduce the Strong Bridge Theorem, where the functorial entropies are involved.

All the entropies listed at the beginning of this section can be obtained as functorial entropies  $\mathbf{h}_F$  with respect to functors  $F$  with target  $\mathfrak{S}$ , except the two considered in §7 and the contravariant set-theoretic entropy  $\mathfrak{h}^*$ , for which the larger category  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  is needed. Furthermore, beyond the category  $\mathfrak{S}$ , we often make use of several subcategories of  $\mathfrak{S}$  (see the diagram in (2.1)).

In fact, when the target of the specific functor  $F$  is  $\mathfrak{S}$ , the norm is subadditive in all specific cases considered in §5, then one ends up in the full subcategory  $\mathfrak{S}^\dagger$  of  $\mathfrak{S}$  consisting of all normed semigroups with subadditive norm. Actually, most of the time the target of  $F$  is the subcategory  $\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$  of  $\mathfrak{S}^\dagger$  of normed semilattices with subadditive norm, that is the bottom in the diagram of categories (2.1). In addition, with respect to the order naturally available in semilattices, the semigroup homomorphisms are monotone.

To describe the remaining few cases, let  $\mathfrak{M}_p^\dagger$  denote the subcategory of  $\mathfrak{S}^\dagger$  consisting of all normed preordered monoids with subadditive norm, and let  $\mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$  be its full subcategory of all normed presemilattices with subadditive norm. The target



Moreover, in §4 we discuss the notion of Bernoulli shifts in an arbitrary (abstract or concrete) category  $\mathfrak{X}$  with products or coproducts. Moreover, for such categories  $\mathfrak{X}$  we give the more general definitions of backward and forward generalized shift.

In particular, the backward generalized shift is a morphism  $\sigma_\lambda : K^Y \rightarrow K^X$  in  $\mathfrak{X}$ , corresponding to a map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  in the category **Set** of sets and maps and a fixed object  $K$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$ . This defines a contravariant functor  $\mathcal{B}_K : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$ , sending  $X \in \mathbf{Set}$  to the product  $K^X$  and  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  to  $\sigma_\lambda$ , which sends coproducts (in **Set**) to products (in  $\mathfrak{X}$ ). Up to natural equivalence, these are all the functors  $\mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  with this property.

Analogously, for a category  $\mathfrak{X}$  with coproducts, the forward generalized shift is a morphism  $\tau_\lambda : K^{(X)} \rightarrow K^{(Y)}$  in  $\mathfrak{X}$ , corresponding to a map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  in **Set** and a fixed object  $K$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$ . It defines a covariant functor  $\mathcal{F}_K : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$ , sending  $X \in \mathbf{Set}$  to the coproduct  $K^{(X)}$  and  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  to  $\tau_\lambda$ , which sends coproducts (in **Set**) to coproducts (in  $\mathfrak{X}$ ). Up to natural equivalence, these are all the functors  $\mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  with this property.

### 1.3 Bridge Theorem

The connections between pairs of entropies are analyzed in §6 from a categorical point of view. This is inspired by the following remarkable connection between the algebraic and the topological entropy, which will be called *Bridge Theorem* throughout this paper.

For a locally compact abelian group  $G$ , denote by  $\widehat{G}$  its Pontryagin dual, that is, the group of all continuous homomorphisms  $G \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$ , where  $\mathbb{T} = \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$  is the circle group, endowed with the compact-open topology; moreover, for an endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$ , denote by  $\widehat{\phi} : \widehat{G} \rightarrow \widehat{G}$  its dual, that is,  $\widehat{\phi}(\chi) = \chi \circ \phi$  for every  $\chi \in \widehat{G}$ .

**Theorem 1.3.** *If  $G$  is an abelian group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  an endomorphism, then  $h_{\text{alg}}(\phi) = h_{\text{top}}(\widehat{\phi})$ . Equivalently, if  $K$  is a compact abelian group and  $\psi : K \rightarrow K$  a continuous endomorphism, then  $h_{\text{top}}(\psi) = h_{\text{alg}}(\widehat{\psi})$ .*

This theorem was proved when  $G$  is a torsion abelian group (i.e.,  $K$  is a totally disconnected compact abelian group) by Weiss [113]; later Peters [92] obtained a proof for  $G$  countable and  $\phi$  an automorphism (i.e.,  $K$  metrizable and  $\psi$  a topological automorphism). The theorem in this general form was recently proved by the authors in [36].

It is not known whether this result holds in general for locally compact abelian groups. Anyway, in [39] it was proved for locally compact abelian groups  $G$  with totally disconnected Pontryagin dual (i.e.,  $G$  is compactly covered) as stated in Theorem 1.4. Indeed, this hypothesis on the group  $G$  permits one to compute more easily the algebraic entropy of the continuous endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  and the topological entropy of its dual  $\widehat{\phi} : \widehat{G} \rightarrow \widehat{G}$ , avoiding the use of the Haar measure that appears in the definition (see [35, 39]). Moreover, one can apply in this setting the so-called limit-free formulas, arising from an idea of Yuzvinski [117] exploited then in [34, 58, 61, 67].

**Theorem 1.4.** *Let  $G$  be a locally compact abelian group such that  $\widehat{G}$  is totally disconnected and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  a continuous endomorphism. Then  $h_{\text{alg}}(\phi) = h_{\text{top}}(\widehat{\phi})$ .*

Furthermore, the following result for topological automorphisms of locally compact abelian groups was stated in [93], but several gaps in the proof were pointed out in [50]. Now it is a consequence of a much more general result from [110].

**Theorem 1.5.** *Let  $G$  be a locally compact abelian group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  a topological automorphism. Then  $h_{\text{alg}}(\phi) = h_{\text{top}}(\widehat{\phi})$ .*

Inspired by Theorem 1.3, we consider here a far reaching generalization (using the same term) that tends to relate two entropies  $h_1 : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  and  $h_2 : \mathfrak{X}_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$ , defined on two categories  $\mathfrak{X}_1$  and  $\mathfrak{X}_2$  connected by a functor

$$\varepsilon : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}_2. \tag{1.3}$$

**Definition 1.6.** Consider the functor (1.3) and let  $h_1 : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  and  $h_2 : \mathfrak{X}_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  be entropies. The pair  $(h_1, h_2)$  satisfies the *Bridge Theorem* with respect to  $\varepsilon$  with constant  $0 < C \in \mathbb{R}_+$  (briefly,  $BT_{\varepsilon, C}$ ) if, for every  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathfrak{X}_1$ ,

$$h_2(\varepsilon(\phi)) = Ch_1(\phi).$$

If  $C = 1$  we write simply  $BT_\varepsilon$ .

One can summarize  $BT_\varepsilon$  by (very roughly) saying that the following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{X}_1 & \xrightarrow{h_1} & \mathbb{R}_+ \\ \varepsilon \downarrow & & \nearrow h_2 \\ \mathfrak{X}_2 & \xrightarrow{h_2} & \mathbb{R}_+ \end{array} \tag{1.4}$$

In Definition 1.6 we allow also  $C = \infty$ , with the natural convention

$$\infty \cdot h_1(\phi) = \begin{cases} \infty & \text{if } h_1(\phi) > 0, \\ 0 & \text{if } h_1(\phi) = 0. \end{cases}$$

In these terms, if  $C = \infty$ , then  $h_2(\varepsilon(\phi))$  takes only two values, namely,

$$h_2(\varepsilon(\phi)) = \begin{cases} \infty & \text{if } h_1(\phi) > 0, \\ 0 & \text{if } h_1(\phi) = 0. \end{cases}$$

In this scheme, denoting by

$$\widehat{\phantom{x}} : \mathbf{LCA} \rightarrow \mathbf{LCA}$$

the Pontryagin duality functor, Theorem 1.3 can be read as:

- (a) for  $\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{AG} \rightarrow \mathbf{CAG}$ , the pair  $(h_{alg}, h_{top})$  satisfies  $BT^-$ ;
- (b) for  $\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{CAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{AG}$ , the pair  $(h_{top}, h_{alg})$  satisfies  $BT^-$ .

In §6.2, using the functorial nature of the entropy seen in (1.2), we discuss various stronger levels of the Bridge Theorem, by passing through the category  $\mathfrak{S}$  of normed semigroups and using  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}$ . We call these stronger versions Strong Bridge Theorems (see Definition 6.8 and (6.1)).

This more precise approach permits one to find a new and transparent proof of Weiss' Bridge Theorem (see Theorem 6.27) as well as of many other Bridge Theorems, that we state in these new terms and prove in §6.4.

Beyond their explicit beauty, the Bridge Theorems may offer a very clear practical advantage, by reducing the computation of an entropy to some more appropriate environment. The best example to this effect are the (Strong) Bridge Theorems making use of the set-theoretic entropies expounded in §6.5. Here the topological entropy of the backward generalized shifts in  $\mathbf{CTop}_2$  and the algebraic entropy of the forward generalized shifts in  $\mathbf{AG}$  are computed in terms of the set-theoretic entropies.

## 1.4 The limits of the general scheme

A natural side-effect of the wealth of nice properties of the functorial entropy  $\mathbf{h}_F = h_{\mathfrak{S}} \circ F$ , obtained from the semigroup entropy  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}$  through functors  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$ , is the loss of some known entropies that we explain below. Indeed, such a functorial entropy admits the Invariance under inversion property  $\mathbf{h}_F(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_F(\phi^{-1})$  (see Lemma 3.9), while it is known that some specific entropies do not have this property.

A first case is Bowen's topological entropy for uniformly continuous selfmaps of non-compact metric spaces, and its extension by Hood to uniform spaces. For a counterexample to  $h_B(\phi^{-1}) = h_B(\phi)$  for Bowen's entropy  $h_B$ , take the automorphism  $\phi : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $\phi(x) = 2x$ , which has  $h_B(\phi) = \log 2$  and  $h_B(\phi^{-1}) = 0$ .

Fortunately, as far as the category  $\mathbf{LCG}$  of locally compact groups and their continuous endomorphisms is concerned, one can include within our scheme Bowen's topological entropy, as well as its algebraic counterpart recalled above, using the larger category  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  as done in §7.

On the other hand, in the general case of a non-compact metric space  $X$ , one would need a kind of poly-norm, i.e., a *family of norms* that corresponds to the family of all compact subspaces of  $X$ . Led by this idea, one could consider the category of semigroups provided with families of norms, and develop the subsequent theory in the line of that presented in this paper.

This more general approach, tailored to include Bowen's topological entropy in full generality, unfortunately creates many technical difficulties (especially in defining the morphisms), a too high price to pay for adding a single entropy to the list.

Another entropy which does not admit the Invariance under inversion property is the intrinsic algebraic entropy from [43] (see also [98]), hence it cannot be obtained as a functorial entropy induced by a functor with target  $\mathfrak{S}$ . This entropy is a generalization of the algebraic entropy  $\text{ent}$  (as it coincides with  $\text{ent}$  on torsion abelian groups) but does not vanish on torsion-free abelian groups. A similar failure in satisfying the Invariance under inversion property can be observed in the pretty analogous case of the algebraic and the topological dimension entropy for locally linearly compact vector spaces from [20, 21] (see Remark 5.37).

Unlike the favorable outcome in the case of Bowen's topological entropy in the category  $\mathbf{LCG}$ , now one has a second more substantial obstacle. Namely, the definition the intrinsic entropy is based on the concept of *inert subgroup*, that was deeply investigated in several papers (see [26, 28, 42, 48, 70]). Similarly, the dimension entropies mentioned above use the fact that the open linearly compact linear subspaces are *inert* (in a similar, appropriate sense) with respect to all continuous linear maps (see [26]).

In order to include the intrinsic and the dimension entropies in a scheme similar to that presented in this paper one needs to find an appropriate counterpart of the notion of inert subgroup (subspace). Unfortunately, the norm of a semigroup, used in the definition of the semigroup entropy to measure the growth of the partial trajectories of an endomorphism, seems inappropriate to "encode" also this subtle property. Indeed, a notion of "inert element" would require a different tool, namely, a kind of "distance", that measures when two elements of the a semigroup are "close". Therefore, a possible way to include the intrinsic and the dimension entropies mentioned above in a scheme similar to that presented in this paper would be to replace the target  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  with an appropriate category of semilattices provided with a "distance" in the above sense (having some additional properties).

Again, as a consequence of this very specialized and additionally complicated approach tailored to cover only these few missing entropies, one would miss the relevant cases covered by our current approach (as the topological entropy and the algebraic entropy, among other entropies). This would certainly push us apart from the main aim of the present paper to unify entropies.

In [38], as a particular case of the notion of semigroup entropy  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}$ , we introduced the notion of semigroup entropy  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}^0(x)$  of an element  $x$  of a normed semigroup  $S$ .

The idea of defining this notion was supported at least from three examples of entropy functions, that can be described in terms of  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}^0$ , namely, the entropy of finite length endomorphisms of Noetherian local rings [88], the dynamical degree of rational maps [102], and the growth rate of endomorphisms of finitely generated groups [15].

## 1.5 Final remarks

A preliminary version of these ideas is expounded in the survey [38], with only few (concise) proofs and with a particular emphasis on the connection of the algebraic entropy to the growth of groups [38, §4.3].

In this paper, we first extend our setting and we give all proofs and details. Moreover, we add some new entropies under the umbrella of  $\mathbf{h}_F$  (in §5.8 and §5.9), in particular [38, §§3.1–3.9] are covered (and largely extended) by §5 and §7.



Furthermore, the major change and novelty in this paper is the completely renewed and extended §6 on the Bridge Theorem.

The second named author gave a talk on what is exposed in §6 of this paper about the Bridge Theorem in the special session “Algebraic Entropy and Topological Entropy” of the First Joint International Meeting RSME-SCM-SEMA-SIMAI-UMI held in Bilbao in 2014.

We started this project with our coauthor and friend Simone Virili, so we thank him also for many useful discussions and ideas; in particular, the idea to use semigroups in place of semilattices belongs to him. He is presenting his own version of this general approach in [110].

The essential and explanatory term Bridge Theorem was coined by our coauthor and friend Luigi Salce, who is one of the main contributor in the theory of the algebraic entropy for groups and modules since its rediscovery in the joint paper [45] with Dikranjan, Goldsmith, and Zanardo.

It is fair to mention the substantial contribution of our friend and colleague Peter Vámos towards a better and deeper understanding of the algebraic entropy. At the Workshop on Commutative Rings and Their Modules held in Bressanone in 2007 he discussed with the first named author and Luigi Salce the subtle connection between entropy and length functions and multiplicity. These contacts continued further, involving also Simone Virili and led to [96], inspired also by [45, 99, 100].

## Acknowledgements

It is a pleasure to thank George Janelidze for fruitful discussions with the first named author and in particular for his suggestion to introduce frame entropy.

We thank also Lorenzo Buseti, who kindly allowed us to reproduce in our Introduction the diagram appearing in his Master’s thesis [19].

We warmly thank Lydia Außenhofer, Domenico Freni and Michal Misiuriewicz for pointing out some problems appearing in previous versions of the paper.

Last but not least, we are indebted with the referees for their careful reading and very useful comments and suggestions.

## 2 The category $\mathfrak{S}$ of normed semigroups

### 2.1 Definition and examples

We denote by  $\mathbb{Z}$  the set of integers, by  $\mathbb{N}$  the set of natural numbers and by  $\mathbb{N}_+$  the set of positive integers.

We start introducing the notion of normed semigroup.

**Definition 2.1.** A *norm* on a semigroup  $(S, \cdot)$  is a map  $v : S \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ . A *normed semigroup* is a semigroup provided with a norm.

If  $S$  is a monoid, a *monoid norm* on  $S$  is a semigroup norm  $v$  such that  $v(1) = 0$ ; in such a case  $S$  is called *normed monoid*.

Denote by  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  the category of all normed semigroups and all semigroup homomorphisms. Nevertheless, the following stronger notion of morphisms in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  appears both natural and also quite useful as we shall see in what follows.

**Definition 2.2.** A semigroup homomorphism  $\phi : (S, v) \rightarrow (S', v')$  between normed semigroups is *contractive* if

$$v'(\phi(x)) \leq v(x) \text{ for every } x \in S.$$

We denote by  $\mathfrak{S}$  the category of normed semigroups, whose morphisms are all the contractive semigroup homomorphisms, i.e.,  $\mathfrak{S}$  is a non-full subcategory of  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ , having the same objects, but less morphisms. If  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ , then  $v(\phi(x)) = v(x)$  for every  $x \in S$ .

Moreover, let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be the non-full subcategory of  $\mathfrak{S}$  with objects all normed monoids and with morphisms all contractive monoid homomorphisms.

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathfrak{S}^* \\ | \\ \mathfrak{S} \\ | \\ \mathfrak{M} \end{array}$$

Given a normed semigroup  $(S, v)$ , a *normed subsemigroup*  $T$  of  $S$  is a subsemigroup of  $S$  with norm the restriction of  $v$  to  $T$ . Note that the inclusion  $T \rightarrow S$  is a morphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ .

**Convention 2.3.** In this paper, most often we consider contractive semigroup endomorphism  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$ , so it is safe to think that a semigroup endomorphism  $\phi$  is contractive, unless otherwise stated.

We use the category  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  when we define the semigroup entropy in §3, and then only in §5.1 (for the contravariant set-theoretic entropy), in §6 (to discuss the Strong Bridge Theorems) and in §7 (for the algebraic and the topological entropy for locally compact groups).

Now we introduce special forms of norm, in particular subadditive semigroup norms will be fundamental in the paper.

**Definition 2.4.** Let  $(S, v)$  be a normed semigroup. The norm  $v$  is:

- (a) *subadditive* if  $v(x \cdot y) \leq v(x) + v(y)$  for every  $x, y \in S$ , in such a case we call  $(S, v)$  briefly *subadditive semigroup* (or *subadditive monoid*, in case it is a monoid);
- (b) *bounded* if there exists  $C \in \mathbb{N}_+$  such that  $v(x) \leq C$  for all  $x \in S$ ;
- (c) *arithmetic* if for every  $x \in S$  there exist a constant  $C_x \in \mathbb{N}_+$  such that  $v(x^n) \leq C_x \cdot \log n$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  with  $n \geq 2$ .

Obviously, bounded norms are arithmetic.

We denote by  $\mathfrak{S}^\dagger$  the full subcategory of  $\mathfrak{S}$  of subadditive semigroups and by  $\mathfrak{M}^\dagger$  the full subcategory of  $\mathfrak{M}$  of subadditive monoids.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \mathfrak{S}^* & \\ & | & \\ & \mathfrak{S} & \\ \mathfrak{S}^\dagger & \swarrow \quad \searrow & \mathfrak{M} \\ & \mathfrak{M}^\dagger & \end{array}$$

A sequence  $\{a_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  of non-negative real numbers is *subadditive* if  $a_{n+m} \leq a_n + a_m$  for every  $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$ . The following known fact is applied in Theorem 3.13 to prove the existence of the limit defining the semigroup entropy in  $\mathfrak{S}^\dagger$ .

**Lemma 2.5** (Fekete Lemma [55]). *For a subadditive sequence  $\{a_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  of non-negative real numbers, the sequence  $\{\frac{a_n}{n}\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  converges and*

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{a_n}{n} = \inf_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \frac{a_n}{n}.$$

Next we give several examples of norms on the semigroup  $(\mathbb{N}, +)$ .

**Example 2.6.** Consider the monoid  $S = (\mathbb{N}, +)$ .

- (a) Subadditive norms  $v$  on  $S$  correspond to subadditive sequences  $\{a_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  in  $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  via  $v \mapsto \{v(n)\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ . Then  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{a_n}{n} = \inf_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \frac{a_n}{n}$  exists by Lemma 2.5.
- (b) For  $0 < p \leq 1$ , define  $v_p : S \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  by  $v_p(x) = x^p$  for  $x \in S$ . Then the norm  $v_p$  is a subadditive monoid norm, but  $v_p$  is not arithmetic.

(c) Define  $v_l : S \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  by  $v_l(x) = \log(x+1)$  for  $x \in S$ . Then  $v_l$  is a subadditive monoid norm, as  $v_l(0) = 0$  and, for  $x, y \in S$ ,

$$v_l(x+y) = \log(x+y+1) \leq \log(xy+x+y+1) = \log(x+1) + \log(y+1) = v_l(x) + v_l(y).$$

Moreover  $v_l$  is arithmetic, since for every  $x \in S$ ,  $nx+1 \leq n^{x+1}$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  with  $n \geq 2$ .

(d) For  $a \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $a > 1$ , consider

$$v_a(m) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } m \in a\mathbb{N}, \\ m & \text{if } m \in \mathbb{N} \setminus a\mathbb{N}. \end{cases}$$

Then the norm  $v_a$  on  $S$  is neither arithmetic nor subadditive.

For  $b \in \mathbb{N}_+$  consider the semigroup endomorphism

$$\varrho_b : x \mapsto bx$$

of  $(S, v_a)$ . Then  $\varrho_b$  is in  $\mathfrak{S}$  (i.e.,  $\varrho_b$  is contractive) if and only if either  $b = 1$  or  $a|b$ .

We can define the norm  $v_l$  in item (c) also for  $S = (\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, +)$ , i.e., with  $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  in place of  $\mathbb{N}$ . Then  $v_l$ , defined by  $v_l(x) = \log(x+1)$  for every  $x \in S$ , is a subadditive and arithmetic monoid norm. Moreover, in this case the range is completely covered by  $v_l(S)$ , i.e.,  $v_l(S) = \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ .

## 2.2 Normed preordered semigroups and normed semilattices

None of the more specific forms of normed semigroup considered in this subsection is formally needed for the definition of the semigroup entropy. Nevertheless, they provide significant and natural examples, as well as useful tools in the proofs, to justify our attention.

**Definition 2.7.** A triple  $(S, \cdot, \leq)$  is a *preordered semigroup* if  $(S, \cdot)$  is a semigroup and  $\leq$  is a preorder such that, for every  $x, y, z \in S$ ,

$$x \leq y \quad \Rightarrow \quad x \cdot z \leq y \cdot z \text{ and } z \cdot x \leq z \cdot y.$$

The *positive cone* of  $S$  is

$$P_+(S) = \{a \in S : x \leq x \cdot a \text{ and } x \leq a \cdot x \text{ for every } x \in S\}.$$

If  $S$  is a preordered monoid,  $P_+(S) = \{a \in S : a \geq 1\}$ .

**Definition 2.8.** If  $S$  is a preordered semigroup, a subset  $T$  of  $S$  is *cofinal* in  $S$  if, for every  $s \in S$ , there exists  $t \in T$  such that  $s \leq t$ .

As usual, we call a map  $\phi : (S_1, \leq) \rightarrow (S_2, \leq)$  between preordered sets *monotone* provided  $\phi(x_1) \leq \phi(x_2)$  for  $x_1, x_2 \in S_1$  with  $x_1 \leq x_2$ .

In the next example we see that for every commutative monoid there exists a natural preorder that makes it a preordered monoid and such that every monoid homomorphism is monotone.

**Example 2.9.** If  $(S, \cdot)$  is a commutative monoid, it admits an intrinsic preorder  $\leq^d$  defined for every  $x, y \in S$  by  $x \leq^d y$  if and only if there exists  $z \in S$  such that  $x \cdot z = y$  (i.e.,  $x$  “divides”  $y$ ). Then  $(S, \cdot, \leq^d)$  is a preordered semigroup with  $P_+(S) = S$ . If  $(T, \cdot)$  is another commutative monoid, then every semigroup homomorphism  $\phi : (S, \cdot) \rightarrow (T, \cdot)$  is monotone with respect to the respective preorders  $\leq^d$  of  $S$  and  $T$ .

So, the assignment  $S \mapsto (S, \leq^d)$  gives a concrete functor (i.e., a functor that does not change the supporting sets and maps) from the category of commutative monoids to the category of preordered commutative monoids with morphisms the monotone monoid homomorphisms.

A *semilattice* is a partially ordered set  $(S, \leq)$  such that for every  $x, y \in S$  there exists the least upper bound  $x \vee y$  of  $x$  and  $y$ . Moreover, we assume that a semilattice  $(S, \leq)$  admits a least element  $0 \in S$ . Equivalently, a semilattice is a commutative monoid  $(S, \vee)$  such that  $x \vee x = x$  for every  $x \in S$  (witnessed by the preorder  $\leq^d$  which is a partial order in this case).

**Example 2.10.** (a) Each lattice  $(L, \vee, \wedge)$  with  $0$  and  $1$  gives rise to two semilattices, namely  $(L, \vee)$  and  $(L, \wedge)$ .

(b) A filter  $\mathcal{F}$  on a given set  $X$  is a semilattice with respect to the intersection, with zero element the set  $X$ .

The following notion offers a convenient weaker form of semilattice. For a preordered set  $(X, \leq)$  and  $x, y \in X$ , we write

$$x \sim y \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad x \leq y \text{ and } y \leq x.$$

**Definition 2.11.** A *presemilattice* is a preordered commutative monoid  $(S, \vee, \leq)$  such that  $x \vee x \sim x$  for every  $x \in S$ .

Now we equip the above semigroups with a *monotone norm*, that is, a monotone map  $v : (S, \cdot, \leq) \rightarrow (\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, +, \leq)$ .

**Definition 2.12.** (a) A *normed preordered semigroup* (respectively, *semilattice*, *presemilattice*) is a preordered semigroup (respectively, semilattice, presemilattice)  $(S, \cdot, \leq)$  endowed with a monotone norm.

(b) A preorder  $\leq$  on a normed semigroup  $(S, v)$  is *compatible* with a semigroup endomorphism  $\phi : (S, v) \rightarrow (S, v)$  if both  $v$  and  $\phi$  are monotone with respect to  $\leq$ .

Clearly, a (normed) semilattice is a (normed) presemilattice, while a (normed) presemilattice is a (normed) preordered semigroup. Hereinafter we use the following notation:

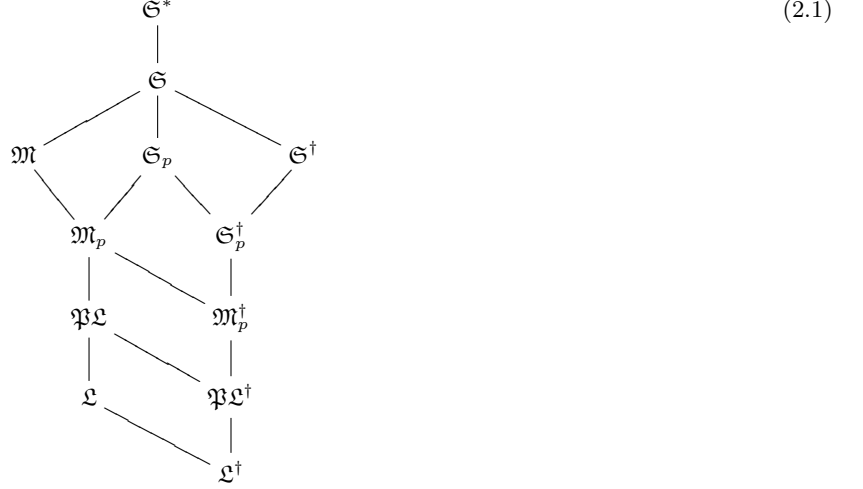
- $\mathfrak{S}_p$  is the subcategory of  $\mathfrak{S}$  of normed preordered semigroups and monotone semigroup homomorphisms;
- $\mathfrak{M}_p = \mathfrak{S}_p \cap \mathfrak{M}$  is the subcategory of  $\mathfrak{M}$  of normed preordered monoids and monotone monoid homomorphisms;
- $\mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{S}$  is the full subcategory of  $\mathfrak{M}_p$  with objects all normed presemilattices;

- $\mathfrak{L}$  is the full subcategory of  $\mathfrak{M}$  with objects all normed semilattices.

Note that a morphism in  $\mathfrak{L}$  is necessarily monotone.

Moreover, let:

- $\mathfrak{S}_p^\dagger = \mathfrak{S}_p \cap \mathfrak{S}^\dagger$ ;
- $\mathfrak{M}_p^\dagger = \mathfrak{M}_p \cap \mathfrak{S}^\dagger$ ;
- $\mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^\dagger = \mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L} \cap \mathfrak{S}^\dagger$ ;
- $\mathfrak{L}^\dagger = \mathfrak{L} \cap \mathfrak{S}^\dagger$ .



Obviously, the norm of a normed presemilattice  $(S, \vee)$  is arithmetic.

Finally, we propose another notion of monotonicity for a semigroup norm which does not require the semigroup to be explicitly endowed with a preorder.

**Definition 2.13.** Let  $(S, v)$  be a normed semigroup. The norm  $v$  is *d-monotone* if

$$\max\{v(x), v(y)\} \leq v(x \cdot y) \text{ for every } x, y \in S.$$

When  $(S, v)$  is a commutative normed monoid,  $v$  is d-monotone precisely when  $v$  is monotone with respect to  $\leq^d$ .

The inequality in Definition 2.13 may become a too stringent condition when  $S$  is close to being a group; indeed, if  $S$  is a group, then it implies that  $v(S) = \{v(1)\}$ , that is,  $v$  is constantly zero. Nevertheless, this will have no impact on our approach to entropy since the specific semigroups that appear in all cases considered hereinafter are indeed quite far from being groups.

The following connection between monotonicity and  $s$ -monotonicity is clear.

**Lemma 2.14.** Let  $S$  be a preordered semigroup. If  $S = P_+(S)$  (in particular, if  $S$  is a lattice), then every monotone norm of  $S$  is also d-monotone.

### 3 The semigroup entropy

#### 3.1 Definition

In this section we introduce the concept, fundamental in this paper, of semigroup entropy.

For  $(S, v)$  a normed semigroup,  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  an endomorphism (not necessarily contractive) and  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , consider the  $n$ -th  $\phi$ -trajectory of  $x \in S$

$$T_n(\phi, x) = x \cdot \phi(x) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{n-1}(x)$$

and let  $c_n(\phi, x) = v(T_n(\phi, x))$ .

We give the following definition of semigroup entropy in the general case of the category  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ , but we will consider it mainly in the category  $\mathfrak{S}$ , that is, for contractive semigroup endomorphisms.

**Definition 3.1.** Let  $S$  be a normed semigroup and  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  an endomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ . The *semigroup entropy of  $\phi$  with respect to  $x \in S$*  is

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\phi, x) = \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_n(\phi, x)}{n}.$$

The *semigroup entropy of  $\phi$*  is

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\phi) = \sup_{x \in S} h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\phi, x).$$

**Convention 3.2.** When we are in the category  $\mathfrak{S}$ , we denote the semigroup entropy by  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}$ . In particular, when we write  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x)$  or  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$  we intend that  $\phi$  is contractive, even if we do not say that explicitly.

In the next example we consider the semigroup entropy of the identity map  $id_S$  of a normed semigroup  $S$ ; since  $id_S$  is always contractive, we can write  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S)$ . In item (a) we see that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S) = 0$  for normed semigroups with arithmetic norm, but also in other cases. This will be generalized to other contracting endomorphisms (namely, quasi-periodic ones) in Theorem 3.11 and Theorem 3.17. In item (b) we see that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S)$  can be infinite; this case can occur even for subadditive semigroups as we will see in Example 3.16.

**Example 3.3.** Let  $(S, v)$  be a normed semigroup.

(a) It is easy to see that if  $v$  is arithmetic, then  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S) = 0$ .

Nevertheless,  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S) = 0$  may occur also when  $v$  is not arithmetic. To this end consider  $S = (\mathbb{N}, +)$  with the norm  $v_p$  from Example 2.6(b), with  $0 < p < 1$ . Then  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S, x) = 0$  for every  $x \in S$ , since  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{(nx)^p}{n} = 0$ , and so  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S) = 0$ .

(b) Consider  $S = (\mathbb{N}, +)$  with the norm  $v_a$ , for some  $a \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $a > 1$ , from Example 2.6(d), which is not arithmetic and not subadditive. Then  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S, x) = x$  for every  $x \in \mathbb{N}$ , and so  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S) = \infty$ .

The next is another example of computation of the semigroup entropy.

**Example 3.4.** (a) Consider  $(\mathbb{N}, +)$  with the norm  $v_l(x) = \log(x+1)$  for every  $x \in \mathbb{N}$  from Example 2.6(c), which is subadditive and arithmetic. Let  $a \in \mathbb{N}_+$  and  $\varrho_a : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  defined by  $\varrho_a(x) = ax$  for every  $x \in \mathbb{N}$ ; note that  $\varrho_a$  is not contractive if  $a > 1$ . Moreover,  $h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\varrho_a, x) = \log a$  for every  $x \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , so  $h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\varrho_a) = \log a$ .

(b) Consider  $(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, +)$  with the norm  $v_l(x) = \log(x+1)$  for every  $x \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ . Let  $a \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ ,  $a > 0$  and  $\varrho_a : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  defined by  $\varrho_a(x) = ax$  for every  $x \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ . If  $a \leq 1$ , then  $\varrho_a$  is contractive and  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\varrho_a) = 0$ . If  $a > 1$ , then  $\varrho_a$  is not contractive and  $h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\varrho_a) = \log a$  as above.

An open problem in the context of the topological and the algebraic entropy is whether the infimum of the positive values of entropy is still positive. This is equivalent to Lehmer's problem from number theory on the values of the Mahler measure (see [35, 40] for more details). Following this idea, for a fixed  $S \in \mathfrak{S}$  we consider the set

$$E_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(S) = \{h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\phi) : (S, \phi) \in \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{S}^*}\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_+$$

of all possible values of the semigroup entropy on endomorphisms of  $S$ , and we let

$$\ell_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(S) = \inf(E_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(S) \setminus \{0\}).$$

Inspired by the counterpart of Lehmer's problem for the topological and the algebraic entropy, one can ask how well the set  $E_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(S) \setminus \{0\}$  approximates 0, i.e., whether  $\ell_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(S) = 0$ . In contrast with the highly difficult case of the topological or the algebraic entropy, from Example 3.4(b) one gets

$$\ell_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, v_l) = 0$$

by taking  $a > 1$  arbitrarily close to 1. This is even more striking since a single semigroup  $S$  allows to get  $\ell_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(S) = 0$ , whereas in the framework of the topological or the algebraic entropy it is not known whether 0 can be attained even by taking a second inf on (i.e., varying) the supporting "space"  $S$ .

## 3.2 Entropy in $\mathfrak{S}$

From now on, in this section we consider entropy in  $\mathfrak{S}$  (and not in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ ), so when we write homomorphism/endomorphism we mean in  $\mathfrak{S}$  (i.e., contractive).

We list the main properties of the semigroup entropy, starting from its monotonicity under taking factor flows.

**Lemma 3.5** (Monotonicity for factors). *Let  $S, T$  be normed semigroups and  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$ ,  $\psi : T \rightarrow T$  endomorphisms. If  $\alpha : S \rightarrow T$  is a surjective homomorphism such that  $\alpha \circ \phi = \psi \circ \alpha$ , i.e., the following diagram commutes,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S & \xrightarrow{\phi} & S \\ \alpha \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha \\ T & \xrightarrow{\psi} & T \end{array} \quad (3.1)$$

then

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi) \leq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Fix  $y \in T$  and find  $x \in S$  with  $y = \alpha(x)$ . Then  $c_n(\psi, y) \leq c_n(\phi, x)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . Dividing by  $n$  and taking the lim sup gives  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi, y) \leq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x)$ . So  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi, y) \leq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$ . When  $y$  runs over  $T$ , we conclude that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi) \leq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$ .  $\square$

Applying twice the above lemma, we obtain the following fundamental property of the semigroup entropy.

**Corollary 3.6** (Invariance under conjugation). *Let  $S$  be a normed semigroup and  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  an endomorphism. If  $\alpha : T \rightarrow S$  is an isomorphism, then*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\alpha \circ \phi \circ \alpha^{-1}).$$

The next lemma shows that also the monotonicity under taking subsemigroups is available.

**Lemma 3.7** (Monotonicity for subflows). *Let  $(S, v)$  be a normed semigroup and  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  an endomorphism. If  $T$  is a  $\phi$ -invariant normed subsemigroup of  $(S, v)$ , then*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) \geq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi \upharpoonright_T).$$

Equality holds provided that  $S$  is preordered,  $\phi$  and  $v$  are monotone and  $T$  is cofinal in  $S$ .

*Proof.* The first part is just a consequence of the definitions. Suppose that  $S$  is preordered,  $\phi$  and  $v$  are monotone and  $T$  is cofinal in  $S$ . Given  $s \in S$ , choose  $t \in T$  such that  $t \geq s$  and let us show that, for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,  $T_n(\phi, s) \leq T_n(\phi, t)$ . Indeed, for  $n = 1$  this comes from the choice of  $t$ . If  $n > 1$  and we already proved our result for  $n - 1$ , then, using the monotonicity of  $\phi$ ,

$$T_n(\phi, s) = T_{n-1}(\phi, s) \cdot \phi^{n-1}(s) \leq T_{n-1}(\phi, t) \cdot \phi^{n-1}(s) \leq T_{n-1}(\phi, t) \cdot \phi^{n-1}(t) = T_n(\phi, t).$$

We can conclude applying the definition of entropy and the monotonicity of  $v$ .  $\square$

The above monotonicity for subsemigroups applies to the subsemigroups  $S_i$  in the next result.

**Proposition 3.8** (Continuity for direct limits). *Let  $(S, v)$  be a normed semigroup and  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  an endomorphism. If  $\{S_i : i \in I\}$  is a directed family of  $\phi$ -invariant normed subsemigroups of  $(S, v)$  with  $S = \varinjlim_{i \in I} S_i$  and  $\phi = \varinjlim_{i \in I} \phi \upharpoonright_{S_i}$ , then*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = \sup_{i \in I} h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi \upharpoonright_{S_i}).$$

*Proof.* By Lemma 3.7 we have that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) \geq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi \upharpoonright_{S_i})$  for every  $i \in I$ , so

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) \geq \sup_{i \in I} h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi \upharpoonright_{S_i}).$$

To verify the converse inequality, let  $x \in S$ . Since  $S = \varinjlim_{i \in I} S_i$ , there exists  $i \in I$  such that  $x \in S_i$ . Then

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi \upharpoonright_{S_i}, x) \leq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi \upharpoonright_{S_i}).$$

Hence, we can conclude that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) \leq \sup_{i \in I} h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi \upharpoonright_{S_i})$ .  $\square$

The next lemma fully exploits our blanket hypothesis that  $\phi$  is an automorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$  (see §7).

**Lemma 3.9** (Invariance under inversion). *Let  $S$  be a commutative normed semigroup and  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  an automorphism. Then*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^{-1}) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi).$$

*Proof.* It suffices to see that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^{-1}, x) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x)$  for each  $x \in S$ . In order to compute  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^{-1}, x)$  note that, for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} c_n(\phi, x) &= v(x \cdot \phi(x) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{n-1}(x)) \\ &= v(\phi^{n-1}(x \cdot \phi^{-1}(x) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{-n+1}(x))) \\ &= v(x \cdot \phi^{-1}(x) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{-n+1}(x)) \\ &= c_n(\phi^{-1}, x). \end{aligned}$$

Now the definition of  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^{-1}, x)$  and  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x)$  applies.  $\square$

Notice that in the above lemma we have to impose the hypothesis that our semigroup is commutative. In §3.5 we give an example of a flow of normed semigroups  $(S, \phi)$  whose semigroup entropy does not coincide with the entropy of its inverse flow  $(S, \phi^{-1})$ . We refer to that section for a more complete description of the entropy of the inverse flow. Similar considerations hold for the second part of the following lemma.

**Proposition 3.10** (Logarithmic Law). *Let  $(S, v)$  be a commutative  $d$ -monotone normed semigroup and  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  an endomorphism. Then, for every  $k \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k) = k \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi).$$

*Furthermore, if  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  is an automorphism, then for all  $k \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ ,*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k) = |k| \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Fix  $k \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . Let  $x \in S$  and let  $y = x \cdot \phi(x) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{k-1}(x)$ . For every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$  we have that

$$c_n(\phi^k, y) = v(y \cdot \phi^k(y) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{(n-1)k}(y)) = c_{nk}(\phi, x).$$

Then

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k) \geq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k, y) = \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_n(\phi^k, y)}{n} = k \cdot \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_{nk}(\phi, x)}{nk} = k \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x).$$

The last equality in the above formula holds for the following reason. For every  $j \in \mathbb{N}_+$  there exists  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $nk \leq j < (n+1)k$ . Since

$$T_j(\phi, x) = T_{nk}(\phi, x) \cdot \phi^{nk} \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{j-1}(x) \text{ and } T_{(n+1)k}(\phi, x) = T_j(\phi, x) \cdot \phi^j(x) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{(n+1)k-1}(x),$$

it follows that

$$c_{nk}(\phi, x) \leq c_j(\phi, x) \leq c_{(n+1)k}(\phi, x),$$

and so

$$\frac{nk}{j} \cdot \frac{c_{nk}(\phi, x)}{nk} \leq \frac{c_j(\phi, x)}{j} \leq \frac{(n+1)k}{j} \cdot \frac{c_{(n+1)k}(\phi, x)}{(n+1)k}.$$

Since  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} nk/j = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (n+1)k/j = 1$ , we have

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_{nk}(\phi, x)}{nk} = \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_{(n+1)k}(\phi, x)}{(n+1)k} = \limsup_{j \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_j(\phi, x)}{j} = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x).$$

We conclude that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k) \geq k \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x)$  for all  $x \in S$ , and consequently,  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k) \geq k \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$ .

Suppose  $v$  to be  $d$ -monotone. Then, for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$  and  $x \in S$ , we have that

$$c_{nk}(\phi, x) = v(T_{nk}(\phi, x)) \geq v(x \cdot \phi^k(x) \cdot \dots \cdot (\phi^k)^{n-1}(x)) = v(T_n(\phi^k, x)) = c_n(\phi^k, x).$$

Therefore,

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x) \geq \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_{nk}(\phi, x)}{nk} \geq \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_n(\phi^k, x)}{n \cdot k} = \frac{1}{k} \cdot \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_n(\phi^k, x)}{n} = \frac{h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k, x)}{k}.$$

Hence,  $k \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) \geq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k, x)$  for every  $x \in S$ , and so  $k \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) \geq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k)$ . We conclude that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k) = k \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$ .

If  $\phi$  is an automorphism and  $k \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ , apply the previous part of the proposition and Lemma 3.9.  $\square$

We call Logarithmic Law the property  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k) = k \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$  for every  $k \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . Of course, if the Invariance under inversion is also available, then one has  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k) = |k| \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$  for every  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ , with  $k \neq 0$ , when  $\phi$  is an automorphism. In case  $k = 0$ , that is,  $\phi^k = id_S$ , the equality holds only if  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S) = 0$  (e.g., when  $(S, v)$  is arithmetic). We shall adopt the terminology Logarithmic Law also with respect to other entropy functions.

A flow  $(S, \phi)$  of  $\mathfrak{S}$  is *quasi-periodic* if there exists a pair of naturals  $m < k$  such that  $\phi^k = \phi^m$ .

**Proposition 3.11** (Vanishing on quasi-periodic flows). *If  $(S, \phi)$  is a quasi-periodic flow of  $\mathfrak{S}$  such that  $S$  is commutative and  $d$ -monotone, then either  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = 0$  or  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = \infty$ .*

*Proof.* Assume that  $\phi^k = \phi^m$  for a pair of naturals  $m < k$ . Then, by Proposition 3.10,

$$k \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^k) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^m) = m \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi).$$

Since  $m < k$ , the equality  $k \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = m \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$  implies that either  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = 0$  or  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = \infty$ .  $\square$

Now we consider products in  $\mathfrak{S}$ . Let  $\{(S_i, v_i) : i \in I\}$  be a family of normed semigroups and let  $S = \prod_{i \in I} S_i$  be their direct product in the category of semigroups. In case  $I$  is finite,  $S$  becomes a normed semigroup with the max-norm  $v_{\Pi}$ , i.e., for  $x = (x_i)_{i \in I} \in S$ ,

$$v_{\Pi}(x) = \sup\{v_i(x_i) : i \in I\}; \tag{3.2}$$

so  $(S, v_{\Pi})$  is the product of the family  $\{S_i : i \in I\}$  in the category  $\mathfrak{S}$ .

**Theorem 3.12** (weak Addition Theorem - products). *Let  $(S_i, v_i)$  be a normed semigroup and  $\phi_i : S_i \rightarrow S_i$  an endomorphism for  $i = 1, 2$ . Then the endomorphism  $\phi = \phi_1 \times \phi_2$  of  $(S, v) = (S_1 \times S_2, v_{\Pi})$  has*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = \max\{h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_1), h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_2)\}.$$

*Proof.* For  $x \in S$ , let  $x_1 \in S_1$  and  $x_2 \in S_2$  be such that  $x = (x_1, x_2)$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x) &= \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{v(T_n(\phi, x))}{n} \\ &= \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\max\{v_1(T_n(\phi_1, x_1)), v_2(T_n(\phi_2, x_2))\}}{n} \\ &= \max\{h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_1, x_1), h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_2, x_2)\}. \end{aligned}$$

Using the fact that for families of positive real numbers  $\{a_i\}_{i \in I}$  and  $\{b_j\}_{j \in J}$

$$\sup_{(i,j) \in I \times J} \max\{a_i, b_j\} = \max\{\sup_{i \in I} a_i, \sup_{j \in J} b_j\}, \tag{3.3}$$

we can conclude that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = \max\{h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_1), h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_2)\}$ .  $\square$

If  $I$  is infinite,  $S = \prod_{i \in I} S_i$  need not carry a semigroup norm  $v$  such that every projection  $p_i : (S, v) \rightarrow (S_i, v_i)$  is a morphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ . This is why the product of the family  $\{(S_i, v_i) : i \in I\}$  in  $\mathfrak{S}$  is actually the subset

$$S_{\text{bnd}} = \{(x_i)_{i \in I} \in S : \sup_{i \in I} v_i(x_i) \in \mathbb{R}\}$$

of  $S$  with the norm  $v_{\Pi}$  defined by (3.2) for  $x = (x_i)_{i \in I} \in S_{\text{bnd}}$ .

We will again consider the product of normed semigroups in §3.4 below, in particular a comparison of Theorem 3.12 and Theorem 3.19.

### 3.3 Entropy in $\mathfrak{S}^\dagger$

In this section we consider the semigroup entropy for endomorphisms  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  of subadditive semigroups. Obviously, a subsemigroup of a subadditive semigroup  $S$  is subadditive, too.

As we see in the next theorem, the superior limit in the definition of the semigroup entropy is actually a limit in this setting. Recall that here endomorphism means contractive semigroup endomorphism.

**Theorem 3.13.** *Let  $(S, v)$  be a subadditive semigroup and  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  an endomorphism. Then for every  $x \in S$  the limit*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_n(\phi, x)}{n} \quad (3.4)$$

exists and satisfies  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x) \leq v(x)$ .

*Proof.* The sequence  $\{c_n(\phi, x)\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}_+}$  is subadditive. Indeed, for every  $n, m \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} c_{n+m}(\phi, x) &= v(x \cdot \phi(x) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{n-1}(x) \cdot \phi^n(x) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{n+m-1}(x)) \\ &= v((x \cdot \phi(x) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{n-1}(x)) \cdot \phi^n(x \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{m-1}(x))) \\ &\leq c_n(\phi, x) + v(\phi^n(T_m(\phi, x))) \\ &\leq c_n(\phi, x) + v(T_m(\phi, x)) = c_n(\phi, x) + c_m(\phi, x), \end{aligned}$$

where the first inequality follows from the subadditivity of  $v$ . By Fekete Lemma 2.5, the limit  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_n(\phi, x)}{n}$  exists and coincides with  $\inf_{n \in \mathbb{N}_+} \frac{c_n(\phi, x)}{n}$ . Finally,  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x) \leq v(x)$  follows from  $c_n(\phi, x) \leq n \cdot v(x)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ .  $\square$

**Remark 3.14.** In the above notation, we have seen at the end of the proof of Theorem 3.13 that, for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,

$$c_n(\phi, x) \leq n \cdot v(x).$$

Hence, the growth of the function  $n \mapsto c_n(\phi, x)$  is at most linear.

By Theorem 3.13 we have that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x)$  is always finite if  $(S, v)$  is a subadditive semigroup. On the other hand,  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x) = \infty$  may occur, if  $(S, v)$  is not subadditive as the following example shows.

**Example 3.15.** Consider  $S = (\mathbb{N}, +)$  with the norm  $v_2$  as in Example 2.6(d), which is not subadditive. The endomorphism  $\varrho_2 : (S, v_2) \rightarrow (S, v_2)$  defined by  $x \rightarrow 2x$  for every  $x \in S$  is contractive (see Example 2.6(d)). For every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,

$$T_n(\varrho_2, 1) = 2^n - 1,$$

and so

$$c_n(\varrho_2, 1) = v_2(T_n(\varrho_2, 1)) = 2^n - 1.$$

Hence, applying the definition, we have that

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\varrho_2, 1) = \infty.$$

In Example 3.3(a) we have seen that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S) = 0$  when the norm of the normed semigroup  $S$  is arithmetic. We show that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S)$  can be infinite even if the norm is subadditive.

**Example 3.16.** Consider  $S = (\mathbb{N}, +)$  with the norm  $v(x) = x$ , which is subadditive; anyway,  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S, x) = x$  for every  $x \in \mathbb{N}$ , and so  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(id_S) = \infty$ .

Now we extend item (a) of Example 3.3 as well as Theorem 3.11. A flow  $(S, \phi)$  of  $\mathfrak{S}$  is *locally quasi-periodic* if for every  $x \in S$  there exists a pair of naturals  $m < k$  such that  $\phi^k(x) = \phi^m(x)$ .

**Theorem 3.17.** *If  $(S, \phi)$  is a locally quasi-periodic flow of  $\mathfrak{S}^\dagger$  such that the norm of  $S$  is arithmetic, then  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = 0$ .*

*Proof.* We have to prove that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x) = 0$  for an arbitrarily chosen  $x \in S$ . Pick a pair of naturals  $m < k$  such that  $\phi^k(x) = \phi^m(x)$  and let  $d = k - m > 0$ . Then, for all  $i \in \mathbb{N}$ ,

$$\phi^{m+id}(x) = \phi^m(x).$$

Let

$$w = \phi^m(T_d(\phi, x)).$$

Since the norm is arithmetic, there exist  $C_w \in \mathbb{N}_+$  such that  $v(w^n) \leq C_w \log n$  for every  $n \geq 2$ .

Pick an arbitrary natural  $n > m + 2d$  and find  $\bar{i} \in \mathbb{N}$  such that

$$m + \bar{i}d < n \leq m + (\bar{i} + 1)d;$$

then  $\bar{i} \geq 2$ . Put  $l = n - (m + \bar{i}d)$ , so that  $0 < l \leq d$ . Now let

$$u = T_l(\phi, x);$$

then  $\phi^{m+\bar{i}d}(u) = \phi^{m+\bar{i}d}(x) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{n-1}(x)$ . Therefore, since  $n = m + \bar{i}d + l$ ,

$$T_n(\phi, x) = T_m(\phi, x) \cdot w^{\bar{i}} \cdot \phi^{m+\bar{i}d}(u).$$

Thus, by the subadditivity of the norm,

$$c_n(\phi, x) = v(T_n(\phi, x)) \leq v(T_m(\phi, x)) + C_w \log \bar{i} + v(T_l(\phi, x)).$$

Since  $v(T_m(\phi, x))$  and  $v(T_l(\phi, x))$  are bounded, we deduce that

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{c_n(\phi, x)}{n} = 0,$$

as required.  $\square$



### 3.4 Entropy in $\mathfrak{M}$

We collect below some additional properties of the semigroup entropy in the category  $\mathfrak{M}$  of normed monoids, where also coproducts are available.

If  $(S_i, v_i)$  is a normed monoid for every  $i \in I$ , the direct sum

$$S_{\oplus} = \bigoplus_{i \in I} S_i = \left\{ (x_i) \in S = \prod_{i \in I} S_i : |\{i \in I : x_i \neq 1\}| < \infty \right\}$$

becomes a normed monoid with the norm

$$v_{\oplus}(x) = \sum_{i \in I} v_i(x_i) \text{ for any } x = (x_i)_{i \in I} \in S_{\oplus}.$$

This definition makes sense since each  $v_i$  is a monoid norm, so  $v_i(1) = 0$ . Hence,  $(S_{\oplus}, v_{\oplus})$  is a coproduct of the family  $\{(S_i, v_i) : i \in I\}$  in  $\mathfrak{M}$ .

Note that

$$S_{\oplus} \subseteq S_{\text{bnd}},$$

so one can consider on  $S_{\oplus}$  both the norm  $v_{\oplus}$  and the norm induced by  $v_{\Pi}$ ; by the definitions of the two norms, we have that

$$v_{\Pi}(x) \leq v_{\oplus}(x)$$

for every  $x \in S_{\oplus}$ .

**Lemma 3.18.** *The category  $\mathfrak{M}^{\dagger}$  is stable under taking submonoids and direct sums.*

*Proof.* The first assertion follows from the fact we mentioned above that  $\mathfrak{S}^{\dagger}$  is stable under taking subsemigroups. If  $(S_i, v_i)$  is a normed monoid for every  $i \in I$  and  $S_{\oplus} = \bigoplus_{i \in I} S_i$ , then we have to check that  $v_{\oplus}$  is subadditive whenever each  $(S_i, v_i)$  is subadditive. This easily follows from the definitions.  $\square$

Now we consider the case when  $I$  is finite, that can easily be reduced to the case of binary products, so we assume  $I = \{1, 2\}$  without loss of generality and we have two normed monoids  $(S_1, v_1)$  and  $(S_2, v_2)$ . The product and the coproduct have the same underlying monoid  $S = S_1 \times S_2$ , but the norms  $v_{\oplus}$  and  $v_{\Pi}$  on  $S$  are different and give different values of the semigroup entropy  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}$  (compare Theorem 3.12 and the following one).

**Theorem 3.19** (weak Addition Theorem - coproducts). *Let  $(S_i, v_i)$  be a normed monoid and  $\phi_i : S_i \rightarrow S_i$  an endomorphism for  $i = 1, 2$ ; moreover, let  $(S, v) = (S_1 \oplus S_2, v_{\oplus})$  and  $\phi = \phi_1 \oplus \phi_2 : S \rightarrow S$ . Then*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) \leq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_1) + h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_2).$$

*If  $v$  is subadditive, then*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_1) + h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_2).$$

*Proof.* For  $x \in S$ , let  $x_1 \in S_1$  and  $x_2 \in S_2$  be such that  $x = (x_1, x_2)$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x) &= \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{v(T_n(\phi, x))}{n} \\ &= \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{v_1(T_n(\phi_1, x_1)) + v_2(T_n(\phi_2, x_2))}{n} \\ &\leq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_1, x_1) + h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_2, x_2). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, applying the definition and (3.3), we have that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) \leq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_1) + h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_2)$ .

Assume that the norm  $v$  is subadditive; clearly this occurs if and only if both norms  $v_1, v_2$  are subadditive. Hence, by Theorem 3.13,

$$\begin{aligned} h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x) &= \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{v(T_n(\phi, x))}{n} \\ &= \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{v_1(T_n(\phi_1, x_1)) + v_2(T_n(\phi_2, x_2))}{n} \\ &= h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_1, x_1) + h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_2, x_2). \end{aligned}$$

Applying the definition and (3.3), we conclude that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_1) + h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi_2)$ .  $\square$

Now we consider the main example in entropy theory, that is, the Bernoulli shifts, in the category of normed monoids.

**Example 3.20.** For a normed monoid  $(M, v) \in \mathfrak{M}$ , let  $B(M)$  be the direct sum  $M^{(\mathbb{N})}$  equipped with the coproduct norm. The *right Bernoulli shift* is defined by

$$\beta_M : B(M) \rightarrow B(M), \quad \beta_M(x_0, \dots, x_n, \dots) = (1, x_0, \dots, x_n, \dots),$$

while the *left Bernoulli shift* is

$${}_M\beta : B(M) \rightarrow B(M), \quad {}_M\beta(x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, \dots) = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n, \dots).$$

Then:

- (a)  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(M\beta) = 0$ ;  
(b)  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\beta_M) = \sup_{x \in M} v(x)$ .

To verify (a), note that for every  $\underline{x} = (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \in B(M)$ , there exists  $m \in \mathbb{N}_+$  such that  ${}_M\beta^m(x) = 1$ . So

$$T_n({}_M\beta, \underline{x}) = T_m({}_M\beta, \underline{x}) \text{ for every } n \geq m,$$

hence dividing by  $n$  and letting  $n$  converge to infinity we obtain  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}({}_M\beta, \underline{x}) = 0$ .

We are left with (b). For  $x \in M$  consider  $\underline{x} = (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \in B(M)$  such that  $x_0 = x$  and  $x_n = 1$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . Then, for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,

$$v_{\oplus}(T_n(\beta_M, \underline{x})) = n \cdot v(x),$$

so  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\beta_M, \underline{x}) = v(x)$ . Hence,  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\beta_M) \geq \sup_{x \in M} v(x)$ . Now let  $\underline{x} = (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \in B(M)$  and let  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  be the greatest index such that  $x_k \neq 1$ ; then, for every  $n \geq k$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} v_{\oplus}(T_n(\beta_M, \underline{x})) &= \sum_{i=0}^{k+n-1} v(T_n(\beta_M, \underline{x})_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} v(x_i \cdots x_0) + (n-k) \cdot v(x_k \cdots x_0) + \sum_{i=1}^k v(x_k \cdots x_i). \end{aligned}$$

Since the first and the last summand do not depend on  $n$ , after dividing by  $n$  and letting  $n$  tend to infinity, we obtain that

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\beta_M, \underline{x}) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{v_{\oplus}(T_n(\beta_M, \underline{x}))}{n} = v(x_k \cdots x_0) \leq \sup_{x \in M} v(x),$$

and this gives the equality in (b).

### 3.5 Alternatives for the definition of trajectories

Here we discuss a possible different notion of semigroup entropy. Let  $(S, v)$  be a normed semigroup,  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  an endomorphism,  $x \in S$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . One could define the “left”  $n$ -th  $\phi$ -trajectory of  $x$  as

$$T_n^{\#}(\phi, x) = \phi^{n-1}(x) \cdots \phi(x) \cdot x,$$

changing the order of the factors with respect to the above definition of  $T_n(\phi, x)$ . With these new trajectories it is possible to define another entropy letting

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\#}(\phi, x) = \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{v(T_n^{\#}(\phi, x))}{n},$$

and

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\#}(\phi) = \sup\{h_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\#}(\phi, x) : x \in S\}.$$

In the same way as above, one can see that the limit superior in the definition of  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\#}(\phi, x)$  is a limit when  $v$  is subadditive.

Obviously  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\#}$  and  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}$  coincide on the identity map and in commutative normed semigroups. Anyway, one can produce examples of flows (e.g., see Example 3.23(b)) whose entropy  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}$  differs from their “left entropy”  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\#}$ . On the other hand, in the next result we describe the relation between these two notions of entropy in the case of an automorphism (compare with Lemma 3.9).

**Proposition 3.21.** *Let  $(S, v)$  be a normed semigroup and let  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  be an automorphism. Then*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^{-1}) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\#}(\phi).$$

*Proof.* It suffices to see that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^{-1}, x) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\#}(\phi, x)$  for each  $x \in S$ . Indeed, given  $x \in S$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} v(T_n(\phi^{-1}, x)) &= v(x \cdot \phi^{-1}(x) \cdots \phi^{-n+1}(x)) \\ &= v(\phi^{-n+1}(\phi^{n-1}(x) \cdots \phi(x) \cdot x)) = \\ &= v(\phi^{n-1}(x) \cdots \phi(x) \cdot x) = v(T_n^{\#}(\phi, x)). \end{aligned}$$

Apply the definitions of  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^{-1}, x)$  and  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\#}(\phi, x)$  to conclude. □

Next we give suitable hypotheses on a flow in  $\mathfrak{S}$  to conclude that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}$  coincides with  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\#}$ . Recall that an anti-isomorphism  $i : S \rightarrow S$  is a bijective map such that  $i(x \cdot y) = i(y) \cdot i(x)$  for every  $x, y \in S$ . The second statement in the following proposition should be compared with Lemma 3.9.

**Proposition 3.22.** *Let  $(S, v)$  be a normed semigroup,  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  an endomorphism and assume that there exists an anti-isomorphism  $i : S \rightarrow S$  such that  $i \circ \phi = \phi \circ i$  and  $v(i(x)) = v(x)$  for every  $x \in S$ . Then*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\#}(\phi).$$

*In particular, if  $\phi$  is an automorphism, then*

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi^{-1}).$$

*Proof.* For every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$  and  $x \in S$  we have that  $v(T_n(\phi, x)) = v(i(T_n(\phi, x)))$  and

$$i(T_n(\phi, x)) = i(\phi^{n-1}(x)) \cdot \dots \cdot i(\phi(x))i(x) = \phi^{n-1}(i(x)) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi(i(x))i(x) = T_n^\#(\phi, i(x));$$

so,  $v(T_n(\phi, x)) = v(T_n^\#(\phi, i(x)))$ . Therefore  $h_\mathfrak{S}(\phi, x) = h_\mathfrak{S}^\#(\phi, i(x))$ , and hence  $h_\mathfrak{S}(\phi) = h_\mathfrak{S}^\#(\phi)$ .

That  $h_\mathfrak{S}(\phi) = h_\mathfrak{S}(\phi^{-1})$  in case  $\phi$  is an automorphism follows from the first assertion and from Proposition 3.21.  $\square$

Part (a) of the following example shows that it may occur that  $h_\mathfrak{S}^\#$  and  $h_\mathfrak{S}$  do not coincide “locally”, while they coincide “globally”. Moreover, modifying appropriately the norm in part (a), Jan Spevák found the example in part (b) for which  $h_\mathfrak{S}^\#$  and  $h_\mathfrak{S}$  do not coincide even “globally”. This example was given in [38], we repeat it here for the sake of completeness.

**Example 3.23.** Let  $X = \{x_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}$  be a faithfully enumerated countable set and let  $S$  be the free semigroup generated by  $X$ . An element  $w \in S$  is a word  $w = x_{i_1}x_{i_2} \dots x_{i_m}$  with  $m \in \mathbb{N}_+$  and  $i_j \in \mathbb{Z}$  for  $j = 1, 2, \dots, m$ . In this case  $m$  is called the length  $\ell_X(w)$  of  $w$ , and a subword of  $w$  is any  $w' \in S$  of the form  $w' = x_{i_k}x_{i_{k+1}} \dots x_{i_l}$  with  $1 \leq k \leq l \leq m$ .

Consider the automorphism  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  determined by  $\phi(x_n) = x_{n+1}$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

- (a) Let  $s(w)$  be the number of adjacent pairs  $(i_k, i_{k+1})$  in  $w$  such that  $i_k < i_{k+1}$ . The map  $v : S \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  defined by  $v(w) = s(w) + 1$  is a subadditive semigroup norm. Then  $\phi : (S, v) \rightarrow (S, v)$  is an automorphism of normed semigroups.

It is straightforward to prove that, for  $w = x_{i_1}x_{i_2} \dots x_{i_m} \in S$ :

- (i)  $h_\mathfrak{S}^\#(\phi, w) = h_\mathfrak{S}(\phi, w)$  if and only if  $i_1 > i_m + 1$  or  $i_1 \leq i_m - 1$ ;
- (ii)  $h_\mathfrak{S}^\#(\phi, w) = h_\mathfrak{S}(\phi, w) - 1$  if and only if  $i_m = i_1$  or  $i_m = i_1 - 1$ .

Moreover,

- (iii)  $h_\mathfrak{S}^\#(\phi) = h_\mathfrak{S}(\phi) = \infty$ .

In particular,  $h_\mathfrak{S}(\phi, x_0) = 1$  while  $h_\mathfrak{S}^\#(\phi, x_0) = 0$ .

- (b) Define a subadditive semigroup norm  $\nu : S \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  as follows. For

$$w = x_{i_1}x_{i_2} \dots x_{i_n} \in S$$

consider its subword  $w' = x_{i_k}x_{i_{k+1}} \dots x_{i_l}$  with maximal length satisfying

$$i_{j+1} = i_j + 1$$

for every  $j \in \mathbb{Z}$  with  $k \leq j \leq l - 1$  and let  $\nu(w) = \ell_X(w')$ . Then  $\phi : (S, \nu) \rightarrow (S, \nu)$  is an automorphism of normed semigroups.

It is possible to prove that, for  $w \in S$ :

- (i) if  $\ell_X(w) = 1$ , then  $\nu(T_n(\phi, w)) = n$  and  $\nu(T_n^\#(\phi, w)) = 1$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ;
- (ii) if  $\ell_X(w) = k$  with  $k > 1$ , then  $\nu(T_n(\phi, w)) < 2k$  and  $\nu(T_n^\#(\phi, w)) < 2k$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ .

From (i) and (ii), and from the definitions, we immediately obtain that

- (iii)  $h_\mathfrak{S}(\phi) = 1 \neq 0 = h_\mathfrak{S}^\#(\phi)$ .

## 4 The functorial entropy

### 4.1 Definition and basic properties

In this section  $\mathfrak{X}$  will always be a category and  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$  a functor.

We define below the functorial entropy and establish its basic properties. We give the proofs only for the case when the functor  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$  is covariant (for contravariant  $F$  one can consider  $F : \mathfrak{X}^{op} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$ ).

Recall that we write  $\mathbf{h}_F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  in place of  $\mathbf{h}_F : \text{Flow}_\mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  for the sake of simplicity.

**Definition 4.1.** Define the *functorial entropy*  $\mathbf{h}_F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  on the category  $\mathfrak{X}$  by letting, for any endomorphism  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathfrak{X}$ ,

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi) = h_\mathfrak{S}(F(\phi)).$$

For  $x \in F(X)$ , the *functorial entropy of  $\phi$  with respect to  $x$*  is

$$\mathbf{H}_F(\phi, x) = h_\mathfrak{S}(F(\phi), x).$$

Clearly, in the above notation,

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi) = \sup_{x \in F(X)} \mathbf{H}_F(\phi, x).$$

The same definition can be naturally extended to the more general case of a functor  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}^*$ , for which we keep the same notation  $\mathbf{h}_F$ .

Now we prove the basic properties of the functorial entropy. The proofs of most of them require the target of the functor to be in  $\mathfrak{S}$ .

**Lemma 4.2** (Invariance under conjugation). *If  $(X, \phi)$  and  $(Y, \psi)$  are isomorphic flows of  $\mathfrak{X}$ , then*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_F(\psi).$$

*Proof.* Let  $\alpha : X \rightarrow Y$  be an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that  $\psi = \alpha \circ \phi \circ \alpha^{-1}$ . Since  $F(\alpha) : F(X) \rightarrow F(Y)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ , we have that  $F(\psi) = F(\alpha) \circ F(\phi) \circ F(\alpha)^{-1}$ , and it suffices to apply Corollary 3.6 to conclude that

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\psi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\alpha) \circ F(\phi) \circ F(\alpha)^{-1}) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi)) = \mathbf{h}_F(\phi).$$

This completes the proof.  $\square$

Next we see the an invertible flow of  $\mathfrak{X}$  and its inverse flow have the same functorial entropy.

**Lemma 4.3** (Invariance under inversion). *Let  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  be an automorphism in  $\mathfrak{X}$  and  $F(X)$  a commutative normed semigroup. Then*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi^{-1}) = \mathbf{h}_F(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Since  $F(\phi) : F(X) \rightarrow F(X)$  is an automorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ , Lemma 3.9 gives immediately

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi^{-1}) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi)^{-1}) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi)) = \mathbf{h}_F(\phi),$$

and this concludes the proof.  $\square$

**Lemma 4.4** (Logarithmic Law). *Let  $(X, \phi)$  be a flow of  $\mathfrak{X}$ . Then  $\mathbf{h}_F(\phi^k) \leq k \cdot \mathbf{h}_F(\phi)$  for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . If  $F(X)$  is commutative and has a  $d$ -monotone norm, then for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi^k) = k \cdot \mathbf{h}_F(\phi).$$

*Moreover, if  $\phi$  is an automorphism, then for all  $k \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ ,*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi^k) = |k| \cdot \mathbf{h}_F(\phi).$$

*Proof.* According to the definition,

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi^k) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi^k)) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi)^k)$$

and  $\mathbf{h}_F(\phi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi))$ , so it suffices to apply Proposition 3.10.  $\square$

Now we see that, under suitable conditions, the functorial entropy of quasi-periodic flows vanishes. In particular, the entropy of the identity morphism is zero.

**Lemma 4.5** (Vanishing on quasi-periodic flows). *If  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}^\dagger$  has the property that all  $F(X)$  have arithmetic norm, then for every quasi-periodic flow  $(X, \phi)$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$  one has  $\mathbf{h}_F(\phi) = 0$ .*

*Proof.* If  $(X, \phi)$  is a quasi-periodic flow of  $\mathfrak{X}$ , then  $(F(X), F(\phi))$  is a quasi-periodic flow of  $\mathfrak{S}^\dagger$  and the norm of  $F(X)$  is arithmetic by hypothesis. Then, by Theorem 3.17, we conclude that  $\mathbf{h}_F(\phi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathcal{F}(\phi)) = 0$ .  $\square$

In the following lemma we see that the functorial entropy of a subflow of a flow  $(X, \phi)$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$  is always smaller than the functorial entropy of  $(X, \phi)$ .

**Lemma 4.6** (Monotonicity for subflows). *Let  $(X, \phi)$  be a flow of  $\mathfrak{X}$  and  $Y$  a  $\phi$ -invariant subobject of  $X$ . If  $F$  is covariant and  $F(Y)$  is a subsemigroup of  $F(X)$  (or if  $F$  is contravariant and  $F(Y)$  is a factor of  $F(X)$ ), then*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi \upharpoonright_Y) \leq \mathbf{h}_F(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Assume that  $F$  is covariant and that  $F(Y)$  is a subsemigroup of  $F(X)$ . Since

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi \upharpoonright_Y) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi \upharpoonright_Y)) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi) \upharpoonright_{F(Y)}),$$

Lemma 3.7 can be applied to conclude that  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi) \upharpoonright_{F(Y)}) \leq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi)) = \mathbf{h}_F(\phi)$ .  $\square$

Now we see that under suitable conditions, if  $(X, \phi)$  and  $(Y, \psi)$  are flows of  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that  $(Y, \psi)$  is a factor of  $(X, \phi)$ , then  $\mathbf{h}_F(\psi) \leq \mathbf{h}_F(\phi)$ .

**Lemma 4.7** (Monotonicity for factors). *Let  $(X, \phi)$  be a flow of  $\mathfrak{X}$  and  $\alpha : X \rightarrow Y$  a quotient in  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that  $\alpha \circ \phi = \psi \circ \alpha$ .*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\phi} & X \\ \alpha \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha \\ Y & \xrightarrow{\psi} & Y \end{array}$$

*If  $F$  is covariant and  $F(\alpha) : F(X) \rightarrow F(Y)$  is a surjective homomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$  (or, if  $F$  is contravariant and  $F(\alpha) : F(X) \rightarrow F(Y)$  is a subobject embedding in  $\mathfrak{S}$ ), then*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\psi) \leq \mathbf{h}_F(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Assume that  $F$  is covariant and  $F(\alpha) : F(X) \rightarrow F(Y)$  is a surjective homomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ . Since  $F(\alpha \circ \phi) = F(\psi \circ \alpha)$  implies  $F(\alpha) \circ F(\phi) = F(\psi) \circ F(\alpha)$ , Lemma 3.5 yields

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\psi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\psi)) \leq h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi)) = \mathbf{h}_F(\phi),$$

and this concludes the proof.  $\square$

Next we discuss the ‘‘continuity’’ of the functorial entropy with respect to direct and inverse limits.

**Lemma 4.8.** *Assume that for every flow  $(X, \phi)$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$ ,  $F(X)$  is a preordered normed semigroup such that the norm is monotone, and  $F(\phi) : F(X) \rightarrow F(X)$  is monotone as well.*

(a) (Continuity for direct limits) *Assume that the functor  $F$  is covariant. Let  $(X, \phi)$  be a flow of  $\mathfrak{X}$  and  $X = \varinjlim X_i$ , with  $X_i$  a  $\phi$ -invariant subobject of  $X$  for every  $i \in I$ . If  $\varinjlim F(X_i)$  is cofinal in  $F(X)$ , then*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi) = \sup_{i \in I} \mathbf{h}_F(\phi \upharpoonright_{X_i}). \quad (4.1)$$

(b) (Continuity for inverse limits) *If  $F$  is contravariant and  $(X, \phi)$  is a flow of  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that  $X = \varprojlim X_i$ , with  $(X_i, \phi_i)$  a factor of  $(X, \phi)$  for every  $i \in I$ , and  $\varprojlim F(X_i)$  is cofinal in  $F(X)$ , one has*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi) = \sup_{i \in I} \mathbf{h}_F(\phi_i). \quad (4.2)$$

*Proof.* (a) Let  $Y = \varinjlim F(X_i)$ . By Lemma 3.7,  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi)) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi \upharpoonright_Y))$ . On the other hand,

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi \upharpoonright_Y)) = \sup_{i \in I} h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi \upharpoonright_{X_i})),$$

by Proposition 3.8. This proves (4.1).

(b) As  $F$  is contravariant, the functor  $F : \mathfrak{X}^{op} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$  is covariant, so (a) applies.  $\square$

**Corollary 4.9.** (a) (Continuity for direct limits) *Assume that the functor  $F$  is covariant, sending direct limits to direct limits, and  $(X, \phi)$  is a flow of  $\mathfrak{X}$  with  $X = \varinjlim X_i$ , such that  $X_i$  a  $\phi$ -invariant subobject of  $X$  for every  $i \in I$ . Then (4.1) holds.*

(b) (Continuity for inverse limits) *For a contravariant functor  $F$ , sending inverse limits to direct limits, and a flow  $(X, \phi)$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that  $X = \varprojlim X_i$ , with  $(X_i, \phi_i)$  a factor of  $(X, \phi)$  for every  $i \in I$ , (4.2) holds.*

Now we pass to finite products and coproducts.

**Lemma 4.10.** *Assume that the functor  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}$  preserves subobjects and that, for every object  $X$  in  $\mathfrak{X}$ ,  $F(X)$  is a preordered normed monoid such that the norm is subadditive and monotone.*

*Let  $(X, \phi)$  and  $(Y, \psi)$  be flows of  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that  $F(\phi) : F(X) \rightarrow F(X)$  and  $F(\psi) : F(Y) \rightarrow F(Y)$  are monotone.*

(a) *Assume that  $F$  is covariant and sends the finite coproduct  $X \oplus Y$  in  $\mathfrak{X}$  to an object  $F(X \oplus Y)$  in  $\mathfrak{M}$  such that  $F(X) \oplus F(Y)$  is contained and cofinal in  $F(X \oplus Y)$ . Then*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi \oplus \psi) = \mathbf{h}_F(\phi) + \mathbf{h}_F(\psi).$$

(b) *Assume that  $F$  is contravariant and sends the finite product  $X \times Y$  in  $\mathfrak{X}$  to an object  $F(X \times Y)$  in  $\mathfrak{M}$  such that  $F(X) \oplus F(Y)$  is contained and cofinal in  $F(X \times Y)$ . Then*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi \times \psi) = \mathbf{h}_F(\phi) + \mathbf{h}_F(\psi).$$

*Proof.* (a) Let  $f = \phi \oplus \psi$ . We first show that the subobject  $F(X) \oplus F(Y)$  of  $F(X \oplus Y)$  is  $F(f)$ -invariant. To this end we note that  $X$  and  $Y$  are  $f$ -invariant subobjects of  $X \oplus Y$ . This obviously implies that both  $F(X)$  and  $F(Y)$  are  $F(f)$ -invariant subobjects of  $F(X \oplus Y)$ . Then  $F(X) \oplus F(Y)$ , as a sum of two  $F(f)$ -invariant subobjects, is still an  $F(f)$ -invariant subobject of  $F(X \oplus Y)$ . Now we can apply Lemma 3.7 to the  $F(f)$ -invariant subobject  $F(X) \oplus F(Y)$  of  $F(X \oplus Y)$  to deduce

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi \oplus \psi)) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi) \oplus F(\psi)).$$

Furthermore, Theorem 3.19 yields the equality

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi) \oplus F(\psi)) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\phi)) + h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F(\psi)).$$

To conclude it suffices to apply the definition of functorial entropy.

(b) As  $F$  is contravariant, the functor  $F : \mathfrak{X}^{op} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$  is covariant, so (a) applies.  $\square$

The first part of the following result follows from the above proposition, the second part from the first one by the Duality Principle in category theory.

**Corollary 4.11** (weak Addition Theorem). *Let  $(X, \phi)$  and  $(Y, \psi)$  be flows of  $\mathfrak{X}$ .*

(a) *Assume that  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}^\dagger$  is covariant and sends finite coproducts in  $\mathfrak{X}$  to finite coproducts in  $\mathfrak{M}^\dagger$ . Then*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi \oplus \psi) = \mathbf{h}_F(\phi) + \mathbf{h}_F(\psi).$$

(b) *Assume that  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}^\dagger$  is contravariant and sends finite products in  $\mathfrak{X}$  to finite coproducts in  $\mathfrak{M}^\dagger$ . Then*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi \times \psi) = \mathbf{h}_F(\phi) + \mathbf{h}_F(\psi).$$

(a\*) *Assume that  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}^\dagger$  is covariant and sends finite products in  $\mathfrak{X}$  to finite products in  $\mathfrak{M}^\dagger$ . Then*

$$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi \oplus \psi) = \max\{\mathbf{h}_F(\phi), \mathbf{h}_F(\psi)\}.$$

(b\*) *Assume that  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}^\dagger$  is contravariant and sends finite coproducts in  $\mathfrak{X}$  to finite products in  $\mathfrak{M}^\dagger$ .*

## 4.2 Shifts

We define the Bernoulli shifts in an arbitrary category  $\mathfrak{X}$  admitting countably infinite powers. Let  $K$  be an object of  $\mathfrak{X}$ , consider  $K^{\mathbb{N}}$  and for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  let  $\pi_n : K^{\mathbb{N}} \rightarrow K$  be the  $n$ -th projection. The *(one-sided) left Bernoulli shift*

$${}_K\beta : K^{\mathbb{N}} \rightarrow K^{\mathbb{N}}$$

is the unique morphism in  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that, for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,

$$\pi_n \circ {}_K\beta = \pi_{n+1}. \quad (4.3)$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K^{\mathbb{N}} & \xrightarrow{{}_K\beta} & K^{\mathbb{N}} \\ & \searrow \pi_{n+1} & \downarrow \pi_n \\ & & K \end{array}$$

Analogously, the *(two-sided) left Bernoulli shift*

$${}_K\bar{\beta} : K^{\mathbb{Z}} \rightarrow K^{\mathbb{Z}} \quad (4.4)$$

is the unique morphism in  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that (4.3) holds for every  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

Moreover, the *(two-sided) right Bernoulli shift*

$$\bar{\beta}_K : K^{\mathbb{Z}} \rightarrow K^{\mathbb{Z}} \quad (4.5)$$

is the unique morphism in  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that, for every  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,

$$\pi_{n+1} \circ \bar{\beta}_K = \pi_n. \quad (4.6)$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K^{\mathbb{Z}} & \xrightarrow{\bar{\beta}_K} & K^{\mathbb{Z}} \\ & \searrow \pi_n & \downarrow \pi_{n+1} \\ & & K \end{array}$$

It is easy to deduce from (4.3) and (4.6), that  ${}_K\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\beta}_K = \bar{\beta}_K \circ {}_K\bar{\beta} = id_{K^{\mathbb{Z}}}$ , so  ${}_K\bar{\beta}$  and  $\bar{\beta}_K$  are isomorphisms in  $\mathfrak{X}$ , inverse to each other.

We will see in §5 the Bernoulli shifts in concrete categories.

Now we introduce the notion of backward generalized shift in an arbitrary category  $\mathfrak{X}$  admitting arbitrary powers, which extends that of Bernoulli shift. First we note that this blanket condition on  $\mathfrak{X}$  implies the existence of a terminal object of  $\mathfrak{X}$  that is uniquely determined up to isomorphism (as it is the product of the empty family of objects of  $\mathfrak{X}$ ; it will be denoted hereinafter by 1). Let  $K$  be an object of  $\mathfrak{X}$  and let  $X$  be a non-empty set. For  $x \in X$  we denote by  $\pi_x : K^X \rightarrow K$  the projection relative to the  $x$ -th member of the family consisting of  $|X|$ -many copies of  $K$ .

**Definition 4.12.** For non-empty sets  $X, Y$ , and a map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$ , define the *backward (or contravariant) generalized shift*

$$\sigma_\lambda : K^Y \rightarrow K^X$$

as the unique morphism in  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that, for every  $x \in X$ ,

$$\pi_x \circ \sigma_\lambda = \pi_{\lambda(x)},$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K^Y & \xrightarrow{\sigma_\lambda} & K^X \\ & \searrow \pi_{\lambda(x)} & \downarrow \pi_x \\ & & K \end{array}$$

If  $\mathfrak{X}$  is a concrete category with forgetful functor  $U : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  such that  $U(K^X) = U(K)^X$  and the  $U(\pi_x)$  are the canonical projections  $U(K)^X \rightarrow U(K)$  in  $\mathbf{Set}$ , then

$$U(\sigma_\lambda) : U(K)^Y \rightarrow U(K)^X$$

is simply the map  $f \mapsto f \circ \lambda$ .

For a selfmap  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$ , the backward generalized shift  $\sigma_\lambda : K^X \rightarrow K^X$  is an endomorphism in  $\mathfrak{X}$ , so one can discuss its entropy once  $\mathfrak{X}$  has an entropy defined on its flows. See §5.2, §5.5 and §6.5 for more details on the backward generalized shifts in specific categories.

**Remark 4.13.** If  $X = Y = \mathbb{N}$  and  $\lambda : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  is defined by  $n \mapsto n + 1$ , then

$$\sigma_\lambda = {}_K\beta$$

is the one-sided left Bernoulli shift. Analogously, the two sided Bernoulli shifts can be seen as backward generalized shifts as well.

Now we see that the generalized shifts represent essentially all contravariant functors  $\mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  sending coproducts to products. For a fixed  $K \in \mathfrak{X}$ , let

$$\mathcal{B}_K : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X} \quad (4.7)$$

be the contravariant functor defined by sending a non-empty set  $X$  to

$$\mathcal{B}_K(X) = K^X$$

and  $\emptyset$  to the fixed terminal object  $1$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$ . For a map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  let

$$\mathcal{B}_K(\lambda) = \sigma_\lambda : K^Y \rightarrow K^X$$

when both  $X$  and  $Y$  are non-empty, and let  $\mathcal{B}_K(\lambda) : K^Y \rightarrow 1 = \mathcal{B}_K(\emptyset)$  be the only morphism to  $1$  when  $X$  is empty.

**Remark 4.14.** By the functoriality of  $\mathcal{B}_K$ , if  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$  is a selfmap of a set  $X$ , then

$$\sigma_{\lambda^m} = (\sigma_\lambda)^m \text{ for all } m \in \mathbb{N}. \quad (4.8)$$

It is not hard to prove that the contravariant functors  $\mathcal{B}_K : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  send coproducts to products. Up to natural equivalence these are the unique functors  $\mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  with this property:

**Theorem 4.15.** *Every contravariant functor  $\varepsilon : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  sending coproducts to products is naturally equivalent to  $\mathcal{B}_K$  for an appropriate  $K \in \mathfrak{X}$ .*

*Proof.* For a singleton  $\{x\}$  let  $K_x = \varepsilon(\{x\})$ , and for a pair of singletons  $\{x_1\}, \{x_2\}$  let

$$j_{x_1, x_2} : \{x_1\} \rightarrow \{x_2\}$$

be the unique bijective map. This gives an isomorphism

$$\xi_{x_2, x_1} = \varepsilon(j_{x_1, x_2}) : K_{x_2} \rightarrow K_{x_1}$$

in  $\mathfrak{X}$ . Fix a singleton  $*$  and for every singleton  $\{x\}$  rename, for brevity,  $j_x = j_{*, x} : * \rightarrow \{x\}$  and  $K = \varepsilon(*) = K_*$ . This gives the following corresponding commutative diagrams of isomorphisms in  $\mathfrak{X}$ .

$$\begin{array}{ccc} * & \xrightarrow{j_{x_1}} & \{x_1\} \\ & \searrow j_{x_2} & \downarrow j_{x_1, x_2} \\ & & \{x_2\} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} K & \xleftarrow{\varepsilon(j_{x_1})} & K_{x_1} \\ & \swarrow \varepsilon(j_{x_2}) & \uparrow \xi_{x_2, x_1} \\ & & K_{x_2} \end{array} \quad (4.9)$$

Every non-empty set  $X$  can be written as a coproduct of its singletons

$$X = \bigoplus_{x \in X} \{x\}$$

determined by the inclusions

$$i_x : \{x\} \rightarrow X.$$

Then, by hypothesis,

$$\varepsilon(X) = \prod_{x \in X} K_x$$

and

$$p_x = \varepsilon(i_x) : \prod_{x \in X} K_x \rightarrow K_x$$

is the canonical projection. We distinguish the product  $\prod_{x \in X} K_x$  from the power  $K^X$ , where all components coincide with  $K$ . In this case we denote the projection relative to  $x \in X$  by  $\pi_x : K^X \rightarrow K$ .

Since the initial object of  $\mathbf{Set}$  is  $\emptyset$ , while the terminal object of  $\mathfrak{X}$  is  $1$ , we deduce that  $\varepsilon(\emptyset) = 1$ , in view of our hypotheses.

The morphism  $\varepsilon(\lambda) : \prod_{y \in Y} K_y \rightarrow \prod_{x \in X} K_x$  corresponding to a map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  between two sets  $X, Y$  is the unique morphism in  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that, for every  $x \in X$ , the following square commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \prod_{x \in X} K_x & \xleftarrow{\varepsilon(\lambda)} & \prod_{y \in Y} K_y \\ p_x \downarrow & & \downarrow p_{\lambda(x)} \\ K_x & \xleftarrow{\xi_{\lambda(x), x}} & K_{\lambda(x)} \end{array} \quad (4.10)$$

Let  $\eta_\emptyset = id_1 : 1 \rightarrow 1$  and, for every non-empty set  $X$ , let

$$\eta_X : \prod_{x \in X} K_x \rightarrow K^X$$

be the unique morphism  $\prod_{x \in X} K_x \rightarrow K^X$  in  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that, for every  $x \in X$ ,

$$\pi_x \circ \eta_X = \varepsilon(j_x) \circ p_x, \quad (4.11)$$

i.e., the following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \prod_{x \in X} K_x & \xrightarrow{\eta_X} & K^X \\ p_x \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_x \\ K_x & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon(j_x)} & K \end{array}$$

It remains to prove that  $\eta$  is a natural equivalence between  $\varepsilon$  and  $\mathcal{B}_K$ . Since  $\eta_X$  is clearly an isomorphism for every  $X$  in **Set**, we need to prove that, for every map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  in **Set**,

$$\eta_X \circ \varepsilon(\lambda) = \sigma_\lambda \circ \eta_Y, \quad (4.12)$$

namely, the following diagram commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \varepsilon(X) & \xrightarrow{\eta_X} & K^X \\ \varepsilon(\lambda) \uparrow & & \uparrow \sigma_\lambda \\ \varepsilon(Y) & \xrightarrow{\eta_Y} & K^Y \end{array}$$

By the categorical properties of the product  $K^X$ , (4.12) is equivalent to the conjunction of the equalities

$$\pi_x \circ \eta_X \circ \varepsilon(\lambda) = \pi_x \circ \sigma_\lambda \circ \eta_Y, \quad x \in X.$$

Note that  $\pi_x \circ \eta_X = \varepsilon(j_x) \circ p_x$  and  $\pi_x \circ \sigma_\lambda = \pi_{\lambda(x)}$ , in view of (4.11) and the definition of the generalized shift  $\sigma_\lambda$ . This ensures the first and the last equality in the following chain of five equalities

$$\begin{aligned} \pi_x \circ \eta_X \circ \varepsilon(\lambda) &= \varepsilon(j_x) \circ p_x \circ \varepsilon(\lambda) = \varepsilon(j_x) \circ \xi_{\lambda(x),x} \circ p_{\lambda(x)} = \\ &= \varepsilon(j_{\lambda(x)}) \circ p_{\lambda(x)} = \pi_{\lambda(x)} \circ \eta_Y = \pi_x \circ \sigma_\lambda \circ \eta_Y, \end{aligned}$$

while the second one follows from (4.10), the third one from (4.9), and the fourth one from (4.11), applied to  $\eta_Y$  and  $\lambda(x) \in Y$ .  $\square$

Now we introduce the notion of forward generalized shift in an arbitrary category  $\mathfrak{X}$  with arbitrary coproducts. This blanket condition on  $\mathfrak{X}$  implies the existence of an initial object of  $\mathfrak{X}$  that is uniquely determined up to isomorphism (as is the coproduct of the empty family of objects of  $\mathfrak{X}$ ; it will be denoted by 0). Let  $K$  be an object of  $\mathfrak{X}$  and let  $X$  be a non-empty set. For  $x \in X$  we denote by  $\iota_x : K \rightarrow K^{(X)}$  the canonical morphism relative to the  $x$ -th member.

**Definition 4.16.** For non-empty sets  $X, Y$ , and a map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$ , define the *forward* (or *covariant*) *generalized shift*

$$\tau_\lambda : K^{(X)} \rightarrow K^{(Y)}$$

as the unique morphism in  $\mathfrak{X}$  such that, for every  $x \in X$ ,

$$\tau_\lambda \circ \iota_x = \iota_{\lambda(x)}. \quad (4.13)$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K^{(X)} & \xrightarrow{\tau_\lambda} & K^{(Y)} \\ \iota_x \uparrow & \nearrow \iota_{\lambda(x)} & \\ K & & \end{array}$$

For a selfmap  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$  of a set  $X$ , the forward generalized shift  $\tau_\lambda : K^{(X)} \rightarrow K^{(X)}$  is an endomorphism in  $\mathfrak{X}$ , so one can discuss its entropy once  $\mathfrak{X}$  has an entropy defined on its flows. See §5.5 and §6.5 for more details on the generalized shifts in concrete categories.

Now we see that the forward generalized shifts represent essentially all covariant functors  $\mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  sending coproducts to coproducts. For a fixed  $K \in \mathfrak{X}$ , let

$$\mathcal{F}_K : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X} \quad (4.14)$$

be the covariant functor defined by sending a non-empty set  $X$  to

$$\mathcal{F}_K(X) = K^{(X)}$$

and  $\emptyset$  to the fixed initial object 0 of  $\mathfrak{X}$ . For a map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  let

$$\mathcal{F}_K(\lambda) = \tau_\lambda : K^{(X)} \rightarrow K^{(Y)}$$

when both  $X$  and  $Y$  are non-empty, and let  $\mathcal{F}_K(\lambda) : 0 = \mathcal{F}_K(\emptyset) \rightarrow K^{(Y)}$  be the only morphism from 0, when  $X$  is empty.

It is not hard to prove that the covariant functors  $\mathcal{B}_K : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  send coproducts to coproducts. That up to natural equivalence these are the unique functors  $\mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  with this property follows from Theorem 4.15 by the general Duality Principle in category theory.

**Theorem 4.17.** *Every covariant functor  $\gamma : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}$  sending coproducts to coproducts is naturally equivalent to  $\mathcal{F}_K$  for an appropriate  $K \in \mathfrak{X}$ .*



## 5 Obtaining known dynamical invariants

In this section we describe how the known entropies can be obtained as functorial entropies  $\mathbf{h}_F$  for appropriate functors  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$ . The range of the functors  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$  considered in §5 and §6 is most of the time the category  $\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ , sometimes  $\mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ , only once  $\mathfrak{M}_p^\dagger$  and once  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ . Also in §7 we make use of functors  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}^*$ .

By an observation made after the definition of the category  $\mathfrak{L}$ , for a functor  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$  and a morphism  $\phi : X_1 \rightarrow X_2$  in  $\mathfrak{X}$ , the morphism  $F(\phi)$  is automatically monotone, so we do not write it explicitly each time.

We follow the next general scheme.

- (FE1) Definition of the specific (classical) entropy  $h : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$ .
- (FE2) Description of the assigned normed semigroup and the functor  $F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$ .
- (FE3) Proof of the equality  $h = \mathbf{h}_F$ .
- (FE4) Basic properties of  $h$  derived from the known general properties of  $\mathbf{h}_F$ :
  - Invariance under conjugation,
  - Invariance under inversion,
  - Logarithmic Law,
  - Vanishing on quasi-periodic flows,
  - Monotonicity for subflows,
  - Monotonicity for factors,
  - Continuity for direct/inverse limits,
  - weak Addition Theorem.

We use the following observations. As the norms are subadditive in all cases considered in this section, the limit in the definition of each entropy is justified in view of Theorem 3.13. This holds true with the exception of the contravariant set-theoretic entropy, for which we use a functor with target  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  instead of  $\mathfrak{S}$ . Moreover, as noted in §2.2, if  $(S, v)$  is a normed semilattice then  $v$  is arithmetic. By Lemma 2.14, if  $(S, v)$  is a normed preordered monoid and  $S = P_+(S)$  (in particular, when  $S$  is a semilattice), then  $v$  is d-monotone.

### 5.1 Set-theoretic entropy

First we consider the category **Set** of sets and maps and we construct the functor  $\mathbf{im} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ , which gives the covariant set-theoretic entropy  $\mathfrak{h}$  introduced in [4] as a functorial entropy. Then we discuss the contravariant set-theoretic entropy  $\mathfrak{h}^*$  from [35]. These entropies  $\mathfrak{h}$  and  $\mathfrak{h}^*$  are related to invariants for selfmaps of sets (i.e., the string number and the antistring number, see [2, 44, 57, 64]).

For a set  $X$ , denote by  $\mathcal{S}(X)$  the family of all finite subsets of  $X$ .

**Definition 5.1.** Let  $X$  be a set and  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$  a selfmap. For  $D \in \mathcal{S}(X)$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$  the  $n$ -th  $\lambda$ -trajectory of  $D$  is

$$\mathfrak{T}_n(\lambda, D) = D \cup \lambda(D) \cup \dots \cup \lambda^{n-1}(D).$$

The covariant set-theoretic entropy of  $\lambda$  with respect to  $D \in \mathcal{S}(X)$  is

$$\mathfrak{h}(\lambda, D) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{|\mathfrak{T}_n(\lambda, D)|}{n}.$$

The covariant set-theoretic entropy of  $\lambda$  is  $\mathfrak{h}(\lambda) = \sup \{\mathfrak{h}(\lambda, D) : D \in \mathcal{S}(X)\}$ .

For a set  $X$ , define  $v(A) = |A|$  for every  $A \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ . Then:

- (i)  $(\mathcal{S}(X), \cup, v, \subseteq)$  is a normed semilattice with neutral element  $\emptyset$ ;
- (ii)  $v$  is subadditive, arithmetic, monotone and d-monotone.

Consider a map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  between sets and define  $\mathbf{im}(\lambda) : \mathcal{S}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}(Y)$  by  $A \mapsto \lambda(A)$  for every  $A \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ . With  $\mathbf{im}(X) = \mathcal{S}(X)$ , we have a covariant functor

$$\boxed{\mathbf{im} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger.}$$

**Theorem 5.2.** Let  $X$  be a set and  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$  a selfmap. Then  $\mathfrak{h}(\lambda, D) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{im}}(\lambda, D)$  for every  $D \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ , so

$$\mathfrak{h}(\lambda) = \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{im}}(\lambda).$$

*Proof.* Let  $D \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ . Since  $\mathfrak{T}_n(\lambda, D) = T_n(\lambda, D)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , we have that  $|\mathfrak{T}_n(\lambda, D)| = c_n(\mathbf{im}(\lambda), D)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . Hence,

$$\mathfrak{h}(\lambda, D) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{im}(\lambda), D) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{im}}(\lambda, D),$$

so the thesis. □

In view of the properties of the functor  $\mathbf{im}$ , by the results in §4, it is easy to check that  $\mathfrak{h}$  is invariant under conjugation and under inversion, is monotone for invariant subsets and for functors, satisfies the Logarithmic Law and vanishes on quasi-periodic flows. Moreover, the weak Addition Theorem holds for coproducts in **Set**, indeed, if  $(X_1, \lambda_1)$  and  $(X_2, \lambda_2)$  are flows of **Set** then for the coproduct  $X_1 \sqcup X_2$ , then  $\mathfrak{h}(\lambda_1 \sqcup \lambda_2) = \mathfrak{h}(\lambda_1) + \mathfrak{h}(\lambda_2)$ .

In analogy with the covariant set-theoretic entropy, we give here another notion of entropy for selfmaps, using counterimages in place of images.

**Definition 5.3.** Let  $X$  be a set and  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$  a finite-to-one selfmap of  $X$ . For  $D \in \mathcal{S}(X)$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , the  $n$ -th  $\lambda$ -cotrajectory of  $D$  is

$$\mathfrak{T}_n^*(\lambda, D) = D \cup \lambda^{-1}(D) \cup \dots \cup \lambda^{-n+1}(D).$$

The contravariant set-theoretic entropy of  $\lambda$  with respect to  $D \in \mathcal{S}(X)$  is

$$\mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda, D) = \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{|\mathfrak{T}_n^*(\lambda, D)|}{n}.$$

The contravariant set-theoretic entropy of  $\lambda$  is  $\mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda) = \sup \{\mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda, D) : D \in \mathcal{S}(X)\}$ .

**Remark 5.4.** For surjective finite-to-one selfmaps the contravariant set-theoretic entropy  $\mathfrak{h}^*$  defined above coincides with the contravariant set-theoretic entropy defined in [35] (this occurs for injective selfmaps as well, see below). We denote here that entropy by  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*$ , in order to distinguish it from  $\mathfrak{h}^*$ , as these two entropies may differ for non-surjective finite-to-one selfmaps.

To recall the definition of  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*$ , we first recall the definition of surjective core of a map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$  of a set  $X$ , given by

$$\text{sc}(\lambda) = \bigcap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \lambda^n(X).$$

Then  $\lambda \upharpoonright_{\text{sc}(\lambda)}$  is surjective and this is the largest restriction of  $\lambda$  that is surjective.

For a selfmap  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathbf{Set}_{\text{fin}}$ ,

$$\mathfrak{h}_p^*(\lambda) = \mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda \upharpoonright_{\text{sc}(\lambda)}).$$

Clearly,  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*(\lambda) \leq \mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda)$  for every  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathbf{Set}_{\text{fin}}$ .

For every  $D \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ ,

$$\mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda, D) = \mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda, D \cap \text{sc}(\lambda)),$$

as the increasing chain  $\{\mathfrak{T}_n^*(\lambda, D)\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}_+}$  stabilizes whenever  $D \cap \text{sc}(\lambda) = \emptyset$ . Then the computation of  $\mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda, D)$  can be limited to finite subsets  $D$  of  $\text{sc}(\lambda)$ . Nevertheless, even for  $D \subseteq \text{sc}(\lambda)$ , the trajectory  $\mathfrak{T}_n^*(\lambda, D)$  may be much larger than  $\mathfrak{T}_n^*(\lambda \upharpoonright_{\text{sc}(\lambda)}, D)$ ; in particular,  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*(\lambda) = 1 < \infty = \mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda)$  may occur (for an example see [35, Remark 3.2.41]).

On the other hand, if  $\lambda$  is injective, then  $\mathfrak{T}_n^*(\lambda, D) \subseteq \text{sc}(\lambda)$  for every finite  $D \subseteq \text{sc}(\lambda)$ , so

$$\mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda) = \mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda \upharpoonright_{\text{sc}(\lambda)}) = \mathfrak{h}_p^*(\lambda).$$

Our preference to  $\mathfrak{h}^*$  here is based on the possibility to obtain it as a functorial entropy (see Theorem 5.6) in the sense of this paper. Further comments on the possibility of obtaining also  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*$  in a functorial way are given in Remark 6.34.

The limit superior in the above definition was proved to be a limit when  $\lambda$  is surjective in [35], even if in general the sequence  $\{|\mathfrak{T}_n^*(\lambda, D)|\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}_+}$  does not need to be subadditive, as the following example from [35] shows, and so Fekete Lemma does not applies (one can see that it is subadditive when  $\lambda$  is injective).

**Example 5.5.** Let  $\lambda : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be a selfmap defined by  $\lambda(1) = \lambda(0) = 0$ ,  $\lambda(2n+2) = 2n$  and  $\lambda(2n+3) = 2n+1$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then  $\mathfrak{T}_2^*(\lambda, \{0\}) = \{0, 1, 2\}$  and so  $|\mathfrak{T}_2^*(\lambda, \{0\})| = 3$ , while  $\mathfrak{T}_1^*(\lambda, \{0\}) = \{0\}$  and hence  $|\mathfrak{T}_1^*(\lambda, \{0\})| + |\mathfrak{T}_1^*(\lambda, \{0\})| = 2 < 3$ .

Now we aim to obtain  $\mathfrak{h}^*$  as a functorial entropy. To this end, for a set  $X$ , let  $\mathbf{cim}(X) = \mathcal{S}(X)$ , while for a finite-to-one map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  the morphism  $\mathbf{cim}(\lambda) : \mathbf{cim}(Y) \rightarrow \mathbf{cim}(X)$  is given by  $A \mapsto \lambda^{-1}(A)$ . This defines a contravariant functor

$$\mathbf{cim} : \mathbf{Set}_{\text{fin}} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}^*.$$

The necessity to “enlarge” the target category (from  $\mathfrak{S}$  to  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ ) comes from the fact that  $\mathbf{cim}(\lambda)$  is contractive if and only if  $\lambda$  is injective. So one necessarily ends up in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ , not in  $\mathfrak{S}$ . In particular, this shows that the blanket hypothesis on contractivity of the endomorphisms in Theorem 3.13 is necessary.

**Theorem 5.6.** Let  $X$  be a set and  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$  a selfmap. Then  $\mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda, D) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{cim}}(\lambda, D)$  for every  $D \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ , so

$$\mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda) = \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{cim}}(\lambda).$$

*Proof.* We can assume without loss of generality that  $\lambda$  is surjective. Let  $D \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ . Since  $\mathfrak{T}_n^*(\lambda, D) = T_n(\lambda, D)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , we have that  $|\mathfrak{T}_n^*(\lambda, D)| = c_n(\mathbf{cim}(\lambda), D)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . Hence,

$$\mathfrak{h}^*(\lambda, D) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{cim}(\lambda), D) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{cim}}(\lambda, D),$$

and this concludes the proof.  $\square$

It is known from [35] that the entropy  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*$  is invariant under conjugation and inversion and it is monotone for invariant subsets and for factors. Moreover,  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*$  vanishes on locally quasi-periodic flows, the Logarithmic Law holds and the weak Addition Theorem holds for coproducts (that is, if  $(X_1, \lambda_1)$  and  $(X_2, \lambda_2)$  are flows of  $\mathbf{Set}$  then their coproduct  $\lambda_1 \sqcup \lambda_2 : X_1 \sqcup X_2 \rightarrow X_1 \sqcup X_2$  satisfies  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*(\lambda_1 \sqcup \lambda_2) = \mathfrak{h}_p^*(\lambda_1) + \mathfrak{h}_p^*(\lambda_2)$ ). On the other hand, the Continuity for inverse limits is not available, since it was observed in [4] that in the category  $\mathbf{Set}_{\text{fin}}$  the inverse limits need not exist.

The entropy  $\mathfrak{h}^*$  introduced here shares the same properties as those of  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*$ , with a few exceptions:  $\mathfrak{h}^*$  need not vanishes on locally quasi-periodic flows and we are not aware whether  $\mathfrak{h}^*$  satisfies the Logarithmic Law (nevertheless,  $\mathfrak{h}^*$  vanishes on quasi-periodic flows).

## 5.2 Topological entropy for compact spaces

In this subsection we show that the topological entropy  $h_{top}$  introduced in [1] can be obtained as a functorial entropy via an appropriate functor  $\mathbf{cov} : \mathbf{CTop} \rightarrow \mathfrak{PS}^\dagger$ , where  $\mathbf{CTop}$  is the category of compact spaces and continuous maps.

For a topological space  $X$  let  $\mathbf{cov}(X)$  be the family of all open covers  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $X$ , with the convention that  $\emptyset$  may belong to  $\mathcal{U}$ . Clearly, every base of  $X$  belongs to  $\mathbf{cov}(X)$ . For  $m \in \mathbb{N}_+$  and  $\mathcal{U}_1, \dots, \mathcal{U}_m \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$ , let

$$\mathcal{U}_1 \vee \dots \vee \mathcal{U}_m = \left\{ \bigcap_{i=1}^m U_i : U_i \in \mathcal{U}_i \right\}.$$

For a continuous selfmap  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$ ,  $\mathcal{U} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , let

$$\phi^{-n}(\mathcal{U}) = \{\phi^{-n}(U) : U \in \mathcal{U}\}.$$

Then  $\phi^{-n}(\mathcal{U}_1 \vee \dots \vee \mathcal{U}_m) = \phi^{-n}(\mathcal{U}_1) \vee \dots \vee \phi^{-n}(\mathcal{U}_m)$  for every  $n, m \in \mathbb{N}_+$ .

**Definition 5.7.** Let  $X$  be a compact space and  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  a continuous selfmap. For  $\mathcal{U} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$  let

$$N(\mathcal{U}) = \min\{|\mathcal{V}| : \mathcal{V} \text{ is a finite subcover of } \mathcal{U}\}.$$

The *topological entropy of  $\phi$  with respect to  $\mathcal{U} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$*  is

$$H_{top}(\phi, \mathcal{U}) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log N(\mathcal{U} \vee \phi^{-1}(\mathcal{U}) \vee \dots \vee \phi^{-n+1}(\mathcal{U}))}{n}. \quad (5.1)$$

The *topological entropy of  $\phi$*  is

$$h_{top}(\phi) = \sup\{H_{top}(\phi, \mathcal{U}) : \mathcal{U} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)\}.$$

For a topological space  $X$ , let  $\mathcal{U}_X$  denote the largest open cover (i.e., the whole topology of  $X$ ) and  $\mathcal{E}_X = \{X\}$  the trivial cover. Then  $(\mathbf{cov}(X), \vee, \mathcal{E}_X)$  is a commutative monoid. This monoid has a natural partial order by inclusion that turns it into a (pre)ordered monoid. In what follows we consider a richer preorder that turns out to be more relevant.

For  $\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$  we say that  $\mathcal{V}$  *refines*  $\mathcal{U}$  (denoted by  $\mathcal{U} \prec \mathcal{V}$ ) if for every  $V \in \mathcal{V}$  there exists  $U \in \mathcal{U}$  such that  $V \subseteq U$ . Let  $\mathcal{U} \sim \mathcal{V}$  if  $\mathcal{U} \prec \mathcal{V}$  and  $\mathcal{V} \prec \mathcal{U}$ . Then  $\prec$  is a preorder on  $\mathbf{cov}(X)$  that is not an order and has bottom element  $\mathcal{E}_X \sim \mathcal{U}_X$  (if  $\mathcal{U}$  is an open cover of  $X$  and  $X \in \mathcal{U}$  then  $\mathcal{U} \sim \mathcal{E}_X$ ).

For  $\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$  we let

$$\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{U}} = \{V \in \mathcal{V} : V \subseteq U \text{ for some } U \in \mathcal{U}\}.$$

Clearly,  $\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{U}} = \mathcal{V}$  if and only if  $\mathcal{U} \prec \mathcal{V}$ . Moreover,  $\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{U}}$  refines  $\mathcal{U}$ , although it need not be a cover when  $\mathcal{V}$  itself does not refine  $\mathcal{U}$ . If  $\mathcal{V}$  is a base, then  $\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{U}}$  is still a base, so in particular, a cover. In this case  $\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{U}}$  is a subcover of  $\mathcal{V}$  that refines  $\mathcal{U}$ .

For a compact space  $X$  and  $\mathcal{U} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$ , let

$$v(\mathcal{U}) = \log N(\mathcal{U}).$$

If  $\mathcal{U} \prec \mathcal{V}$  then  $v(\mathcal{U}) \leq v(\mathcal{V})$ .

In general,  $\mathcal{U} \vee \mathcal{U} \neq \mathcal{U}$ , yet  $\mathcal{U} \vee \mathcal{U} \sim \mathcal{U}$ , and more generally  $\mathcal{U} \vee \mathcal{U} \vee \dots \vee \mathcal{U} \sim \mathcal{U}$ . Therefore,  $v(\mathcal{U} \vee \mathcal{U} \vee \dots \vee \mathcal{U}) = v(\mathcal{U})$ .

Then:

- (i)  $(\mathbf{cov}(X), \vee, v, \prec)$  is a normed pre-semilattice with zero  $\mathcal{E}_X$ ;
- (ii)  $v$  is subadditive, arithmetic, monotone and d-monotone.

For  $X, Y$  topological spaces, a continuous map  $\phi : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $\mathcal{U} \in \mathbf{cov}(Y)$ , let

$$\mathbf{cov}(\phi) : \mathbf{cov}(Y) \rightarrow \mathbf{cov}(X)$$

be defined by  $\mathcal{U} \mapsto \phi^{-1}(\mathcal{U})$ . Obviously,  $\mathbf{cov}(\phi)$  is monotone with respect to the order  $\prec$ . So, this defines a contravariant functor  $\mathbf{cov}$  from the category of all topological spaces to the category of commutative semigroups (actually, presemilattices).

For every continuous map  $\phi : X \rightarrow Y$  of compact spaces and  $\mathcal{W} \in \mathbf{cov}(Y)$ , the inequality  $v(\phi^{-1}(\mathcal{W})) \leq v(\mathcal{W})$  holds (if  $\phi$  is surjective, then equality holds). Consequently, the assignments  $X \mapsto \mathbf{cov}(X)$  and  $\phi \mapsto \mathbf{cov}(\phi)$  define a contravariant functor

$$\boxed{\mathbf{cov} : \mathbf{CTop} \rightarrow \mathfrak{PS}^\dagger.}$$

**Theorem 5.8.** Let  $X$  be a compact space and  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  a continuous selfmap. Then  $H_{top}(\phi, \mathcal{U}) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{cov}}(\phi, \mathcal{U})$  for every  $\mathcal{U} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$ , and so

$$h_{top}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{cov}}(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{U} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$ . For every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , since

$$\mathcal{U} \vee \phi^{-1}(\mathcal{U}) \vee \dots \vee \phi^{-n+1}(\mathcal{U}) = T_n(\mathbf{cov}(\phi), \mathcal{U}),$$

we conclude that

$$\log N(\mathcal{U} \vee \phi^{-1}(\mathcal{U}) \vee \dots \vee \phi^{-n+1}(\mathcal{U})) = c_n(\mathbf{cov}(\phi), \mathcal{U}),$$

and so  $H_{top}(\phi, \mathcal{U}) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{cov}(\phi), \mathcal{U}) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{cov}}(\phi, \mathcal{U})$ . □

The contravariant functor  $\mathbf{cov}$  takes factors in  $\mathbf{CTop}$  to subobject embeddings in  $\mathfrak{PS}^\dagger$ , subobject embeddings in  $\mathbf{CTop}$  to surjective morphisms in  $\mathfrak{PS}^\dagger$ . Therefore, the properties proved in §4 yield that the topological entropy  $h_{top}$  is invariant under conjugation and inversion, it is monotone for restrictions to invariant subspaces and for factors, it satisfies the Logarithmic Law, and it vanishes on quasi-periodic continuous selfmaps.

The fact that  $\prec$  is a preorder on  $\mathbf{cov}(X)$  compatible with  $\mathbf{cov}(\phi)$  will now be used to check the Continuity for inverse limits. To see this, we apply Proposition 5.9 below, Lemma 4.8 and Theorem 5.8, to conclude that

$$h_{top}(\phi) = \sup_{i \in I} h_{top}(\phi_i),$$

for an inverse system  $\{(X_i, p_{i,j})\}_{i \in I}$  of compact spaces  $X_i$  with  $p_{i,j} : X_i \rightarrow X_j$ , for  $i, j \in I$  with  $j \leq i$ , and its inverse limit  $X = \varprojlim_{i \in I} X_i$  with canonical projections  $p_i : X \rightarrow X_i$ . Indeed, in this case each  $\mathbf{cov}(p_i) : \mathbf{cov}(X_i) \rightarrow \mathbf{cov}(X)$  is an embedding that allows us to consider  $\varinjlim_{i \in I} \mathbf{cov}(X_i)$  in  $\mathbf{cov}(X)$ .

**Proposition 5.9.** *In the above notation,  $\varinjlim_{i \in I} \mathbf{cov}(X_i)$  is cofinal in  $\mathbf{cov}(X)$ .*

*Proof.* For every  $i \in I$  we identify  $\mathbf{cov}(X_i)$  with the family

$$\mathcal{B}_i^* = \{\mathbf{cov}(p_i)(\mathcal{V}) : \mathcal{V} \in \mathbf{cov}(X_i)\}$$

in  $\mathbf{cov}(X)$ . Then  $\varinjlim_{i \in I} \mathbf{cov}(X_i)$  can be identified with  $L = \bigcup_{i \in I} \mathcal{B}_i^*$ . It is known that

$$\mathcal{B} = \bigcup L$$

is a base of  $X$  by [53, 2.5.5], in particular  $\mathcal{B} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$ .

In order to check that  $L$  is cofinal in  $\mathbf{cov}(X)$ , pick  $\mathcal{U} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$ . Then  $\mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{U}}$  is a subcover of  $\mathcal{B}$  such that  $\mathcal{U} \prec \mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{U}}$ ; moreover,  $\mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{U}}$  is a base of  $X$  as noted above, so  $\mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{U}} \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$ . By the compactness of  $X$  there exists a finite subcover

$$\mathcal{W} = \{p_{i_k}^{-1}(V_{i_k}) : V_{i_k} \in \mathcal{U}_{X_{i_k}}, p_{i_k}^{-1}(V_{i_k}) \subseteq U_k, \text{ for some } U_k \in \mathcal{U}, k = 1, \dots, n\}$$

of  $\mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{U}}$ , in particular  $\mathcal{U} \prec \mathcal{W}$ . It remains to prove that

$$\mathcal{W} \in L.$$

To this end, take an index  $i_0 \geq i_k$ , for  $k = 1, \dots, n$  and let

$$W_k = p_{i_0, i_k}^{-1}(V_{i_k})$$

for  $k = 1, \dots, n$ . Since  $p_{i_k} = p_{i_0, i_k} \circ p_{i_0}$ , we have that  $p_{i_k}^{-1}(V_{i_k}) = p_{i_0}^{-1}(W_k)$ , and obviously  $W_k$  is an open subset of  $X_{i_0}$  for  $k = 1, \dots, n$ . Let

$$\mathcal{W}^* = \{W_k : k = 1, \dots, n\}.$$

Since  $p_{i_0} : X \rightarrow X_{i_0}$  is surjective and  $\mathcal{W} = p_{i_0}^{-1}(\mathcal{W}^*) \in \mathbf{cov}(X)$ , we deduce that  $\mathcal{W}^* \in \mathbf{cov}(X_{i_0})$ . Hence,  $\mathcal{W} = \mathbf{cov}(p_{i_0})(\mathcal{W}^*) \in L$ .  $\square$

It is known that the Weak Addition Theorem holds for the topological entropy, that is, for any pair of continuous selfmaps  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  and  $\psi : Y \rightarrow Y$  one has

$$h_{top}(\phi \times \psi) = h_{top}(\phi) + h_{top}(\psi).$$

This was announced in [1, Theorem 3] and correctly proved in [73].

The topological entropy satisfies also another version of weak Addition Theorem for coproducts (see [1, Theorem 4] and [35, Proposition 4.1.9]). Indeed, if  $(X, \phi)$  and  $(Y, \psi)$  are flows in  $\mathbf{CTop}$ , and we consider the coproduct  $X \sqcup Y$ , then  $h_{top}(\phi \sqcup \psi) = \max\{h_{top}(\phi), h_{top}(\psi)\}$ . This result follows from Corollary 4.11 and Theorem 5.8.

It is worth recalling that in the computation of the topological entropy it is possible to reduce to surjective continuous selfmaps of compact spaces (see [105, 112]).

In the category  $\mathbf{CTop}$  the Bernoulli shifts defined in (4.2), (4.4) and (4.5) have obviously the following concrete form. For  $K \in \mathbf{CTop}$

$${}_K\beta : K^{\mathbb{N}} \rightarrow K^{\mathbb{N}}, \quad {}_K\beta(x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, \dots) = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n+1}, \dots), \quad (5.2)$$

while

$${}_K\bar{\beta} : K^{\mathbb{Z}} \rightarrow K^{\mathbb{Z}}, \quad {}_K\bar{\beta}((x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}) = (x_{n+1})_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}, \quad (5.3)$$

and

$$\bar{\beta}_K : K^{\mathbb{Z}} \rightarrow K^{\mathbb{Z}}, \quad \bar{\beta}_K((x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}) = (x_{n-1})_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}. \quad (5.4)$$

As far as the topological entropy of the Bernoulli shifts is concerned, it is known (see also Theorem 6.33 and Corollary 6.21 below) that in case  $K$  is a compact Hausdorff space,

$$h_{top}({}_K\beta) = h_{top}({}_K\bar{\beta}) = h_{top}(\bar{\beta}_K) = \log |K|, \quad (5.5)$$

with the convention that  $\log |K| = \infty$  if  $X$  is infinite.

More generally, for a selfmap  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$  of a non-empty set  $X$ , and  $K$  a topological space, the backward generalized shift from Definition 4.12 has the form

$$\sigma_\lambda : K^X \rightarrow K^X, \quad f \mapsto \lambda \circ f; \quad (5.6)$$

it was introduced and studied in [2, 4] as a generalized version of the Bernoulli shifts recalled in (5.2), (5.3), (5.4) (see Remark 4.13). It is known from [4] that, if  $K$  is a compact Hausdorff space, then

$$h_{top}(\sigma_\lambda) = \mathfrak{h}(\lambda) \cdot \log |K|, \quad (5.7)$$

with the convention that  $\log |K| = \infty$  if  $K$  is infinite. In particular, this covers the formula in (5.5) and will follow from Theorem 6.33.

### 5.3 Entropy for topological spaces and entropy for frames

Topological entropy functions for non-compact topological spaces were discussed by Hofer [76], who proposed a quite natural extension of the topological entropy  $h_{top}$  to continuous selfmaps of arbitrary topological spaces, by simply replacing the open covers by finite open covers. For a topological space  $X$  let  $\text{fin-cov}(X)$  denote the subfamily of  $\text{cov}(X)$  consisting of all finite open covers of  $X$ . For every continuous selfmap  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  and for every  $\mathcal{U} \in \text{fin-cov}(X)$  define  $H_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi, \mathcal{U})$  and  $h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi)$  as in Definition 5.7.

For continuous selfmaps of compact spaces obviously  $h_{\text{fin-top}} = h_{top}$ , as every open cover of a compact space has a finite open subcover.

Obviously,  $\text{fin-cov}(X)$  is a submonoid of the commutative monoid  $(\text{cov}(X), \vee)$ . It is important to underline that if the topological space  $X$  is not compact, then the latter monoid is not normed. Nevertheless, the norm  $v = \log N(-)$  is well-defined on the submonoid  $\text{fin-cov}(X)$  and furthermore, considering on  $\text{fin-cov}(X)$  the restriction of the refinement relation  $\prec$  recalled above for  $\text{cov}(X)$ :

- (i)  $(\text{fin-cov}(X), \vee, v, \prec)$  is a normed presemilattice with zero  $\mathcal{E}_X$ ;
- (ii)  $v$  is subadditive, arithmetic, monotone and d-monotone.

Since for every continuous map  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  the map  $\text{cov}(f) : \text{cov}(Y) \rightarrow \text{cov}(X)$  sends  $\text{fin-cov}(Y)$  to  $\text{fin-cov}(X)$ , the restriction  $\text{fin-cov}(f)$  of  $\text{cov}(f)$  to  $\text{fin-cov}(Y)$  defines a morphism  $\text{fin-cov}(f) : \text{fin-cov}(Y) \rightarrow \text{fin-cov}(X)$  which is monotone and so it is in  $\mathfrak{PL}^\dagger$ . In this way we obtain a new contravariant functor

$$\text{fin-cov} : \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathfrak{PL}^\dagger.$$

The proof of the next theorem is similar to that of Theorem 5.8.

**Theorem 5.10.** *Let  $X$  be a topological space and  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  a continuous selfmap. Then  $H_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi, \mathcal{U}) = \mathbf{H}_{\text{cov}}(\phi, \mathcal{U})$  for every  $\mathcal{U} \in \text{fin-cov}(X)$ , and so*

$$h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\text{fin-cov}}(\phi).$$

**Remark 5.11.** The functor  $\text{fin-cov}$  does not extend the functor  $\text{cov} : \mathbf{CTop} \rightarrow \mathfrak{PL}^\dagger$  defined above. In fact, if  $X$  is a compact space, then

$$\text{fin-cov}(X) \subseteq \text{cov}(X).$$

Anyway,  $\text{fin-cov}(X)$  is cofinal in  $\text{cov}(X)$ . Moreover, if  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  is a continuous selfmap of a compact space  $X$ , then  $\text{fin-cov}(X)$  is a  $\text{cov}(\phi)$ -invariant normed subsemigroup of  $\text{cov}(X)$ , since  $\text{fin-cov}(\phi)$  is defined as the restriction of  $\text{cov}(\phi)$  to  $\text{fin-cov}(X)$ . Then Lemma 3.7 gives that

$$\mathbf{h}_{\text{fin-cov}}(\phi) = h_{\mathfrak{E}}(\text{fin-cov}(\phi)) = h_{\mathfrak{E}}(\text{cov}(\phi)) = \mathbf{h}_{\text{cov}}(\phi),$$

and hence  $h_{top}(\phi) = h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi)$  by Theorems 5.8 and 5.10.

By the results in §4,  $h_{\text{fin-top}}$  is invariant under conjugation and invariant under inversion, moreover it satisfies the Logarithmic Law and it vanishes on quasi-periodic continuous selfmaps. We consider the monotonicity for closed invariant subspaces and for factors in Theorem 5.14 below.

**Lemma 5.12.** *If  $Y$  is a closed subspace of a topological space  $X$ , and  $j : Y \hookrightarrow X$  is the subspace embedding of  $Y$  in  $X$ , then  $\text{fin-cov}(j) : \text{fin-cov}(X) \rightarrow \text{fin-cov}(Y)$  is surjective.*

*Proof.* For every  $\mathcal{U} = \{U_1, \dots, U_n\} \in \text{fin-cov}(Y)$  define a cover  $\mathcal{U}^* = \{U_0^*, U_1^*, \dots, U_n^*\} \in \text{fin-cov}(X)$ , where  $U_0^* = X \setminus Y$  and  $U_i^*$  is an open set of  $X$  such that  $U_i^* \cap Y = U_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .  $\square$

On the other hand, if  $Y$  is not closed in  $X$ , then  $\text{fin-cov}(j)$  need not be surjective even when  $X$  is compact, as the following example shows.

**Example 5.13.** Let  $Y = \mathbb{N}$  endowed with the discrete topology, and  $X = a\mathbb{N}$  be the one-point Aleksandrov compactification of  $Y$ . Let  $U_1$  (respectively,  $U_2$ ) be the set of all odd (respectively, even) numbers in  $Y$ . Then  $\mathcal{U} = \{U_1, U_2\} \in \text{fin-cov}(Y)$ , yet  $\mathcal{U} \neq \text{fin-cov}(j)(\mathcal{U}^*)$  for any  $\mathcal{U}^* \in \text{fin-cov}(X)$ .

As a corollary of the general properties in §4, we obtain the following properties of the entropy  $h_{\text{fin-top}}$ , announced in [76] and proved in [47].

**Theorem 5.14.** *Let  $X$  be a topological space and  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  a selfmap.*

- (a) *If  $Y$  is a topological space,  $q : X \rightarrow Y$  is a continuous surjective map and  $\bar{\phi} : Y \rightarrow Y$  a selfmap such that  $\bar{\phi} \circ q = q \circ \phi$ , then  $h_{\text{fin-top}}(\bar{\phi}) \leq h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi)$ .*
- (b) *If  $Y$  is a closed invariant subspace of  $X$ , then  $h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi \upharpoonright_Y) \leq h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi)$ .*

*Proof.* (a) The map  $\text{fin-cov}(q) : \text{fin-cov}(Y) \rightarrow \text{fin-cov}(X)$  is injective and the image of  $\text{fin-cov}(Y)$  in  $\text{fin-cov}(X)$  is invariant under  $\text{fin-cov}(\bar{\phi})$ . Hence, Lemma 4.6 applies.

(b) Let  $j : Y \hookrightarrow X$  be the subspace embedding of  $Y$  in  $X$ . As we noticed in Lemma 5.12,  $\text{fin-cov}(j) : \text{fin-cov}(Y) \rightarrow \text{fin-cov}(X)$  is surjective, so Lemma 4.7 applies.  $\square$

One may object that  $h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi \upharpoonright_Y) \leq h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi)$  may still remain true regardless of the fact that  $Y$  is closed or not in  $X$ . That this is not the case follows from an example similar to that provided in Example 5.13, where  $Y$  is just  $\mathbb{Z}$  and  $X = aY$  is the one-point Aleksandrov compactification of  $Y$ . The selfmap  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  is defined by  $\phi(p) = p$  (that is the extra point added to  $Y$  to get  $X = aY$ ) and  $\phi(n) = n + 1$ . Then  $h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi \upharpoonright_Y) = \infty$  (see [76]), while  $h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi) = 0$  (actually,  $h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi) = 0$  for every continuous selfmap  $\phi$  of  $X$ , according to [4]).

We do not know whether the Continuity for inverse limits and the weak Addition Theorem hold for  $h_{\text{fin-top}}$ . The arguments applied in the previous section for  $h_{\text{top}}$  use the compactness of the spaces, so they do not apply to the present case.

A careful analysis of the above definitions of topological entropy shows that the points of the space are completely absent from the definitions. All necessary information to define the entropies is encoded in the complete lattice  $\mathcal{O}(X)$  of all open sets of the topological space  $X$ . Note that in  $\mathcal{O}(X)$  one has the distributive law

$$\left( \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i \right) \cap V = \bigcup_{i \in I} (U_i \cap V).$$

Recall that an algebraic structure with this property is called a *frame* (or a *complete Heyting algebra*). Namely, a frame consists of a supporting set  $L$  with two operations  $\vee$  and  $\wedge$  such that  $(L, \vee)$  is a complete semilattice,  $(L, \vee, \wedge)$  is a distributive lattice and the following stronger distributive law holds as well; in fact, for arbitrary sets  $I$ ,

$$\left( \bigvee_{i \in I} u_i \right) \wedge v = \bigvee_{i \in I} (u_i \wedge v).$$

In particular,  $L$  has a top element  $1 = \bigvee_{u \in L} u$ . A frame homomorphism  $\phi : L \rightarrow L'$  preserves the operations (hence, it preserves the bottom and the top element as well). This defines the category **Frm** of all frames and frame homomorphisms, and we will introduce entropy in the category **Frm**.

**Definition 5.15.** Let  $L$  be a frame. A (*finite*) *cover* of  $L$  is a (finite) subset  $\mathcal{U} = \{u_i : i \in I\}$  of  $L$  such that  $\bigvee_{i \in I} u_i = 1$ .

If  $\mathcal{U}$  is a cover and  $\mathcal{U}' \subseteq \mathcal{U}$  is still a cover of  $L$ , then we call  $\mathcal{U}'$  a *subcover* of  $\mathcal{U}$ . For two covers  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{U}'$  of a frame  $L$ , let

$$\mathcal{U} \vee \mathcal{U}' = \{u \wedge u' : u \in \mathcal{U}, u' \in \mathcal{U}'\}.$$

One can check that this is still a cover of  $L$ . Denoting by  $\text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)$  the family of all finite covers of a frame  $L$ , it is easy to see that if  $\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{U}' \in \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)$ , then  $\mathcal{U} \vee \mathcal{U}' \in \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)$ . This turns  $(\text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L), \vee)$  into a commutative monoid with neutral element the cover  $\{1\}$ . One can define also a preorder  $\prec$  on  $\text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)$  as above given by the refinement. Moreover, define a norm on  $\text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)$  by letting  $v(\mathcal{U})$  be the logarithm of the minimum size of a subcover of  $\mathcal{U}$ . Obviously,  $v(\{1\}) = 0$ , so  $v$  is a monoid norm. Similarly to the case of  $\text{fin-cov}$ , we have that:

- (i)  $(\text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L), \vee, v, \prec)$  is a normed presemilattice with zero  $\mathcal{E}_X$ ;
- (ii)  $v$  is subadditive, arithmetic, monotone and d-monotone.

For a frame homomorphism  $\phi : L \rightarrow L'$  and  $\mathcal{U} \in \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)$  let  $\phi(\mathcal{U}) = \{\phi(u) : u \in \mathcal{U}\}$ . This defines a monotone monoid homomorphism  $\text{fin-cov}_{fr}(\phi) : \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L) \rightarrow \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L')$ , and consequently a covariant functor

$$\boxed{\text{fin-cov}_{fr} : \mathbf{Frm} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}\mathfrak{L}^\dagger}$$

by sending  $L \mapsto \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)$  and  $\phi \mapsto \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(\phi)$ .

In particular, for every frame endomorphism  $\phi : L \rightarrow L$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$  one has the possibility to define the  $n$ -th  $\phi$ -trajectory  $T_n(\phi, \mathcal{U}) = \mathcal{U} \vee \phi(\mathcal{U}) \vee \dots \vee \phi^{n-1}(\mathcal{U})$  of a (finite) cover  $\mathcal{U}$ . If  $\mathcal{U} \in \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)$ , then also  $T_n(\phi, \mathcal{U}) \in \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)$ , so one can define the frame entropy as follows.

**Definition 5.16.** Let  $(L, \phi)$  be a flow of **Frm**. The *frame entropy* of  $\phi$  with respect to  $\mathcal{U} \in \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)$  is

$$H_{fr}(\phi, \mathcal{U}) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{v(T_n(\phi, \mathcal{U}))}{n}.$$

The *frame entropy* of  $\phi$  is

$$h_{fr}(\phi) = \sup\{H_{fr}(\phi, \mathcal{U}) : \mathcal{U} \in \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)\}.$$

It follows directly from the definition that  $H_{fr}(\phi, \mathcal{U}) = \mathbf{H}_{\text{fin-cov}_{fr}}(\phi, \mathcal{U})$  for every flow  $(L, \phi)$  of **Frm** and every  $\mathcal{U} \in \text{fin-cov}_{fr}(L)$ . So we can conclude that

$$h_{fr} = \mathbf{h}_{\text{fin-cov}_{fr}}. \quad (5.8)$$

## 5.4 Measure entropy

In this subsection we consider the category **MesSp** of probability measure spaces  $(X, \mathfrak{B}, \mu)$  and measure preserving maps, constructing a functor  $\text{mes} : \mathbf{MesSp} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$  in order to obtain from our general scheme the measure entropy  $h_{\text{mes}}$  from [82] and [103].

We recall that a *measure space* is a triple  $(X, \mathfrak{B}, \mu)$ , where  $X$  is a set,  $\mathfrak{B}$  is a  $\sigma$ -algebra over  $X$  (the elements of  $\mathfrak{B}$  are called *measurable sets*) and  $\mu : \mathfrak{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \cup \{\infty\}$  is a probability measure. A selfmap  $\psi : X \rightarrow X$  is a *measure preserving transformation* if  $\mu(\psi^{-1}(B)) = \mu(B)$  for every  $B \in \mathfrak{B}$ .

For a measure space  $(X, \mathfrak{B}, \mu)$  and a measurable partition  $\xi = \{A_i : i = 1, \dots, k\}$  of  $X$ , define the *entropy* of  $\xi$  by Boltzmann's Formula

$$H(\xi) = - \sum_{i=1}^k \mu(A_i) \log \mu(A_i).$$

For two partitions  $\xi, \eta$  of  $X$ , let

$$\xi \vee \eta = \{U \cap V : U \in \xi, V \in \eta\}$$

and define  $\xi_1 \vee \xi_2 \vee \dots \vee \xi_n$  analogously for partitions  $\xi_1, \xi_2, \dots, \xi_n$  of  $X$ . For a measure preserving transformation  $\psi : X \rightarrow X$  and a measurable partition  $\xi = \{A_i : i = 1, \dots, k\}$  of  $X$ , let

$$\psi^{-j}(\xi) = \{\psi^{-j}(A_i) : i = 1, \dots, k\}.$$

For a measure space  $(X, \mathfrak{B}, \mu)$  let  $\mathfrak{P}(X)$  be the family of all measurable partitions  $\xi = \{A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k\}$  of  $X$ .

**Definition 5.17.** Let  $X$  be a measure space and  $\psi : X \rightarrow X$  a measure preserving transformation. The *measure entropy* of  $\psi$  with respect to  $\xi \in \mathfrak{P}(X)$  is

$$H_{mes}(\psi, \xi) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{H(\bigvee_{j=0}^{n-1} \psi^{-j}(\xi))}{n}.$$

The *measure entropy* of  $\psi$  is

$$h_{mes}(\psi) = \sup\{H_{mes}(\psi, \xi) : \xi \in \mathfrak{P}(X)\}.$$

For a measure space  $(X, \mathfrak{B}, \mu)$  and  $\xi \in \mathfrak{P}(X)$ , we have that  $\xi \vee \xi = \xi$ . Consider again on  $\mathfrak{P}(X)$  the preorder  $\prec$  given by the refinement. Then:

- (i)  $(\mathfrak{P}(X), \vee, H, \prec)$  is a normed semilattice with zero  $\xi_0 = \{X\}$ ;
- (ii)  $H$  is subadditive (see [112]), arithmetic, monotone and d-monotone.

Consider a measure preserving map  $T : X \rightarrow Y$ . For  $\xi = \{A_i\}_{i=1}^k \in \mathfrak{P}(Y)$  let

$$T^{-1}(\xi) = \{T^{-1}(A_i)\}_{i=1}^k.$$

Since  $T$  is measure preserving, one has  $T^{-1}(\xi) \in \mathfrak{P}(X)$  and  $\mu(T^{-1}(A_i)) = \mu(A_i)$  for all  $i = 1, \dots, k$ . Hence,

$$H(T^{-1}(\xi)) = H(\xi)$$

and so  $\mathbf{mes}(T) : \mathfrak{P}(Y) \rightarrow \mathfrak{P}(X)$ , defined by  $\xi \mapsto T^{-1}(\xi)$ , is a morphism in  $\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . Therefore the assignments  $X \mapsto \mathfrak{P}(X)$  and  $T \mapsto \mathbf{mes}(T)$  define a contravariant functor

$$\boxed{\mathbf{mes} : \mathbf{MesSp} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger}.$$

**Theorem 5.18.** Let  $X$  be a measure space and  $\psi : X \rightarrow X$  a measure preserving transformation. Then  $H_{mes}(\psi, \xi) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{mes}}(\psi, \xi)$  for every  $\xi \in \mathfrak{P}(X)$ , and so

$$h_{mes}(\psi) = \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{mes}}(\psi).$$

*Proof.* Let  $\xi \in \mathfrak{P}(X)$ . For every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , since

$$\xi \vee \psi^{-1}(\xi) \vee \dots \vee \psi^{-n+1}(\xi) = T_n(\mathbf{mes}(\psi), \xi),$$

applying the definitions we can conclude that

$$H(\mathcal{U} \vee \psi^{-1}(\mathcal{U}) \vee \dots \vee \psi^{-n+1}(\mathcal{U})) = c_n(\mathbf{mes}(\psi), \xi),$$

and so  $H_{mes}(\psi, \xi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{mes}(\psi), \xi) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{mes}}(\psi, \xi)$ . □

The functor  $\mathbf{mes}$  is covariant, and sends subobjects embeddings in  $\mathbf{MesSp}$  to surjective morphisms in  $\mathfrak{L}$  and surjective maps in  $\mathbf{MesSp}$  to embeddings in  $\mathfrak{L}$ . Hence, similarly to  $h_{top}$ , also the measure entropy  $h_{mes}$  is invariant under conjugation and inversion, it is monotone with respect to taking restrictions to invariant subspaces and factors, it satisfies the Logarithmic Law and it vanishes on quasi-periodic measure preserving transformations.

It is known that the measure entropy satisfies also the weak Addition Theorem, namely, if  $(X, \phi)$  and  $(Y, \psi)$  are flows of  $\mathbf{Mes}$ , then  $h_{mes}(\phi \times \psi) = h_{mes}(\phi) + h_{mes}(\psi)$ , where  $\phi \times \psi : X \times Y \rightarrow X \times Y$ . But it is not clear whether it is possible to apply directly Lemma 4.10, indeed to prove the needed cofinality a preliminary restriction is required (see [112, Theorem 4.23] and its proof).

## 5.5 Algebraic entropy

Here we consider the category  $\mathbf{Grp}$  of all groups and their homomorphisms and its subcategory  $\mathbf{AG}$  of all abelian groups. We construct two functors  $\mathbf{sub} : \mathbf{AG} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$  and  $\mathbf{pet} : \mathbf{Grp} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}_p^\dagger$  that permit to find from the general scheme the two algebraic entropies  $\mathbf{ent}$  and  $h_{alg}$  as functorial entropies.

We start recalling the definition of the entropies  $\mathbf{ent}$  and  $h_{alg}$  following [35]. For a group  $G$  let  $\mathcal{H}(G) = \mathcal{S}(G) \setminus \{\emptyset\}$  be the family of all finite non-empty subsets of  $G$  and  $\mathcal{F}(G)$  be its subfamily of all finite subgroups of  $G$ .

**Definition 5.19.** Let  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  be an endomorphism. For  $F \in \mathcal{H}(G)$ , and for  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , the  $n$ -th  $\phi$ -trajectory of  $F$  is

$$T_n(\phi, F) = F \cdot \phi(F) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{n-1}(F).$$

The algebraic entropy of  $\phi$  with respect to  $F \in \mathcal{H}(G)$  is

$$H_{alg}(\phi, F) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log |T_n(\phi, F)|}{n};$$

The algebraic entropy of  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  is

$$h_{alg}(\phi) = \sup\{H_{alg}(\phi, F) : F \in \mathcal{H}(G)\},$$

while

$$\text{ent}(\phi) = \sup\{H_{alg}(\phi, F) : F \in \mathcal{F}(G)\}.$$

If  $G$  is abelian, then

$$\text{ent}(\phi) = \text{ent}(\phi \upharpoonright_{t(G)}) = h_{alg}(\phi \upharpoonright_{t(G)}). \quad (5.9)$$

Moreover,  $h_{alg}(\phi) = \text{ent}(\phi)$  if  $G$  is locally finite, that is every finite subset of  $G$  generates a finite subgroup; note that every locally finite group is obviously torsion, while the converse holds true under the hypothesis that the group is solvable (the solution of Burnside's problem shows that even groups of finite exponent fail to be locally finite).

For a group  $G$ , let  $v(F) = \log |F|$  for every  $F \in \mathcal{H}(G)$ . In case  $G$  is abelian one has:

- (i)  $(\mathcal{F}(G), +, v, \subseteq)$  is a normed semilattice with zero  $\{0\}$ ;
- (ii)  $v$  is subadditive, arithmetic, monotone and d-monotone.

For every group homomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow H$ , the map  $\mathcal{F}(\phi) : \mathcal{F}(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}(H)$ , defined by  $F \mapsto \phi(F)$ , is a morphism in  $\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . Therefore, the assignments  $G \mapsto \mathcal{F}(G)$  and  $\phi \mapsto \mathcal{F}(\phi)$  define a covariant functor

$$\boxed{\text{sub} : \mathbf{AG} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger.}$$

**Theorem 5.20.** Let  $G$  be a group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  an endomorphism. Then  $H_{alg}(\phi, F) = \mathbf{H}_{\text{sub}}(\phi, F)$  for every  $F \in \mathcal{F}(G)$ , and so

$$\text{ent}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}}(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Let  $F \in \mathcal{F}(G)$ . Since  $T_n(\phi, F) = T_n(\mathcal{F}(\phi), F)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , applying the definitions we can conclude that  $\log |T_n(\phi, F)| = c_n(\mathcal{F}(\phi), F)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , and so

$$H_{alg}(\phi, F) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathcal{F}(\phi), F) = \mathbf{H}_{\text{sub}}(\phi, F);$$

this concludes the proof. □

Since the covariant functor  $\text{sub}$  takes factors in  $\mathbf{AG}$  to surjective morphisms in  $\mathfrak{S}$ , embeddings in  $\mathbf{AG}$  to embeddings in  $\mathfrak{S}$ , and direct limits in  $\mathbf{AG}$  to direct limits in  $\mathfrak{S}$ , in view of the properties proved in §4, the algebraic entropy  $\text{ent}$  is invariant under conjugation and inversion, it is monotone for restrictions to invariant subspaces and for factors, it satisfies the Logarithmic Law, it vanishes on quasi-periodic endomorphisms and it is continuous for direct limits.

The weak Addition Theorem holds as well. Indeed, for an abelian group  $G$  and an endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$ , the order  $\subseteq$  is compatible with  $\mathcal{F}(\phi)$ . So, if  $\psi : H \rightarrow H$  is another group endomorphism and  $H$  is abelian, since  $\mathcal{F}(G) \oplus \mathcal{F}(H)$  is cofinal in  $\mathcal{F}(G \oplus H)$  and the restriction of the norm of  $\mathcal{F}(G \oplus H)$  to  $\mathcal{F}(G) \oplus \mathcal{F}(H)$  coincides with  $v_\oplus$ , Lemma 4.10 applies and together with Theorem 5.20 gives

$$\text{ent}(\phi \oplus \psi) = \text{ent}(\phi) + \text{ent}(\psi).$$

For an arbitrary group  $G$ , one has:

- (i)  $(\mathcal{H}(G), \cdot, v, \subseteq)$  is an ordered normed monoid with neutral element  $\{1\}$ ;
- (ii)  $v$  is subadditive, monotone and d-monotone.

**Remark 5.21.** If  $G$  is an abelian group, then  $\mathcal{H}(G)$  is commutative and  $v$  is arithmetic since for every  $F \in \mathcal{H}(G)$ ,

$$|T_n(\text{id}_G, F)| \leq (n+1)^{|F|},$$

where clearly

$$T_n(\text{id}_G, F) = \underbrace{F + \dots + F}_n$$

(note that the latter inequality extends also to nilpotent groups, see [29]).

More precisely, for a group  $G$  the following conditions are equivalent:

- (a)  $(\mathcal{H}(G), v)$  is arithmetic;
- (b)  $G$  has polynomial growth;
- (c)  $G$  is locally virtually nilpotent.

Indeed, we say that  $G$  has polynomial growth if for every  $F \in \mathcal{H}(G)$  with  $1 \in G$ , the map  $n \mapsto |T_n(\text{id}_G, F)|$  is polynomial, so the equivalence (a)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (b) follows from a straightforward computation. Moreover, (b)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (c) follows from the celebrated Gromov's theorem, stating that a finitely generated group  $G$  has polynomial growth if and only if  $G$  is virtually nilpotent. For more details on the connection of the algebraic entropy with the group growth from geometric group theory see [35, 38, 62, 63].



For every group homomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow H$ , the map  $\mathcal{H}(\phi) : \mathcal{H}(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}(H)$ , defined by  $F \mapsto \phi(F)$ , is a morphism in  $\mathfrak{M}_p^\dagger$ . Consequently the assignments  $G \mapsto (\mathcal{H}(G), v)$  and  $\phi \mapsto \mathcal{H}(\phi)$  give a covariant functor

$$\boxed{\text{pet} : \mathbf{Grp} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}_p^\dagger}$$

(the notation **pet** was chosen to honor Justin Peters who inspired the definition of the entropy  $h_{alg}$ ). The functor **sub** is a subfunctor of **pet** as  $\mathcal{F}(G) \subseteq \mathcal{H}(G)$  for every abelian group  $G$ .

**Theorem 5.22.** *Let  $G$  be a group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  an endomorphism. Then  $H_{alg}(\phi, F) = \mathbf{H}_{\text{pet}}(\phi, F)$  for every  $F \in \mathcal{H}(G)$ , and so*

$$h_{alg}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\text{pet}}(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Let  $F \in \mathcal{H}(G)$ . Since, for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,

$$T_n(\phi, F) = T_n(\mathcal{H}(\phi), F),$$

applying the definitions we conclude that

$$\log |T_n(\phi, F)| = c_n(\mathcal{H}(\phi), F).$$

So,  $H_{alg}(\phi, F) = h_{\mathcal{S}}(\mathcal{H}(\phi), F) = \mathbf{H}_{\text{pet}}(\phi, F)$ .  $\square$

As for the algebraic entropy  $\text{ent}$ , since the covariant functor **pet** takes factors in **Grp** to surjective morphisms in  $\mathfrak{S}_p^\dagger$ , embeddings in **Grp** to embeddings in  $\mathfrak{S}_p^\dagger$ , and direct limits in **Grp** to direct limits in  $\mathfrak{S}$ , in view of the properties in §4 we have automatically that the algebraic entropy  $h_{alg}$  is invariant under conjugation, it is monotone for restrictions to invariant subgroups and for quotients, it satisfies the Logarithmic Law in the abelian case (for the general setting see [35, Proposition 5.1.8]) and it is continuous for direct limits. The Invariance under inversion follows in the abelian case from Lemma 4.3, in the general case from Proposition 3.22 applied to the inversion  $x \mapsto x^{-1}$ ; it follows also from a remark in [38].

The weak Addition Theorem holds as well. Indeed, for a group  $G$  and an endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$ , the order  $\subseteq$  is compatible with  $\mathcal{H}(\phi)$ . So, if  $\psi : H \rightarrow H$  is another group endomorphism, since  $\mathcal{H}(G) \oplus \mathcal{H}(H)$  is cofinal in  $\mathcal{H}(G \oplus H)$  and the restriction of the norm of  $\mathcal{H}(G \oplus H)$  to  $\mathcal{H}(G) \oplus \mathcal{H}(H)$  coincides with  $v_\oplus$ , Lemma 4.10 applies and together with Theorem 5.22 gives

$$h_{alg}(\phi \oplus \psi) = h_{alg}(\phi) + h_{alg}(\psi).$$

In view of Remark 5.21 and Lemma 4.5, the algebraic entropy  $h_{alg}$  vanishes on quasi-periodic endomorphisms of locally virtually nilpotent groups. In particular,  $h_{alg}$  of the identity automorphism of a locally virtually nilpotent group is zero, while this is no more true in general. In fact,  $h_{alg}(id_G) > 0$  precisely when the group  $G$  has exponential growth, and in this case  $h_{alg}(id_G) = \infty$  by the Logarithmic Law. On the other hand, there exist groups  $G$  of intermediate growth, as Grigorchuck's group, namely, groups having growth that is neither polynomial nor exponential (and so  $h_{alg}(id_G) = 0$  yet  $G$  is not locally virtually nilpotent).

In the context of the algebraic entropy one considers the right Bernoulli shifts for *direct sums*. Let  $G$  be a group; the (*one-sided*) *right Bernoulli shift* is

$$\beta_G^\oplus : G^{(\mathbb{N})} \rightarrow G^{(\mathbb{N})}, \quad (x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n, \dots) \mapsto (1, x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}, \dots), \quad (5.10)$$

while the (*two-sided*) *right Bernoulli shift* is

$$\bar{\beta}_G^\oplus : G^{(\mathbb{Z})} \rightarrow G^{(\mathbb{Z})}, \quad (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \mapsto (x_{n-1})_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}. \quad (5.11)$$

Obviously, the two-sided right Bernoulli shift  $\bar{\beta}_G^\oplus$  coincides with the restriction to the direct sum of the two-sided right Bernoulli shift defined in (4.5) considered in the category **Grp**.

**Remark 5.23.** We recall that, if  $G$  is an abelian group and  $\widehat{G}$  is its compact Pontryagin dual group, then

$$\widehat{\beta_G^\oplus} = \widehat{G}\beta \quad \text{and} \quad \widehat{\bar{\beta}_G^\oplus} = \widehat{G}\bar{\beta}.$$

It is known that, for any group  $G$ ,

$$h_{alg}(\beta_G^\oplus) = h_{alg}(\bar{\beta}_G^\oplus) = \log |G|, \quad (5.12)$$

with the convention that  $\log |G| = \infty$  if  $G$  is infinite.

For a finite-to-one map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  between two non-empty sets, and a group  $K$ , the generalized shift  $\sigma_\lambda : K^Y \rightarrow K^X$  sends  $K^{(Y)}$  to  $K^{(X)}$  (as  $f \in K^{(X)}$  precisely when  $f$  has finite support). We denote

$$\sigma_\lambda^\oplus = \sigma_\lambda \upharpoonright_{K^{(Y)}}. \quad (5.13)$$

In particular, when  $Y = X$ , then  $K^{(X)}$  is a  $\sigma_\lambda$ -invariant subgroup of  $K^X$  precisely when  $\lambda$  is finite-to-one. It is known from [35, Theorem 7.3.3] and [2] that, for the contravariant set-theoretic entropy  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*$  defined there (see Remark 5.4),

$$h_{alg}(\sigma_\lambda^\oplus) = \mathfrak{h}_p^*(\lambda) \log |K|, \quad (5.14)$$

with the convention that  $\log |K| = \infty$  if  $K$  is infinite. As proved in [2], the formula in (5.12) can be deduced from (5.14).

Moreover, in the concrete category **AG**, the forward generalized shift from Definition 4.16 has the following description. Let  $K$  be an abelian group and  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  a map. Then

$$\tau_\lambda : K^{(X)} \rightarrow K^{(Y)}, \quad (k_x)_{x \in X} \mapsto \left( \sum_{x \in \lambda^{-1}(y)} k_x \right)_{y \in Y}, \quad (5.15)$$

with the convention that a sum on the empty set is 0.

**Remark 5.24.** Let us see now that the right Bernoulli shifts are forward generalized shifts, in the same way as we have seen above that the left Bernoulli shifts are backward generalized shifts. Indeed, if  $\lambda : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  is defined by  $n \mapsto n + 1$ , then

$$\tau_\lambda = \beta_K^\oplus$$

is the one-sided right Bernoulli shift recalled in (5.10). The same occurs for the two-sided right Bernoulli shift  $\bar{\beta}_K^\oplus$  in (5.11).

It is proved in [32], in the more general case of amenable semigroup actions, that, for  $K$  an abelian group and  $\lambda : X \rightarrow X$  a selfmap,

$$h_{alg}(\tau_\lambda) = \mathfrak{h}(\lambda) \cdot \log |K|,$$

with the convention that  $\log |K| = \infty$  if  $K$  is infinite. This generalizes the formula (5.12) for the right Bernoulli shifts and it will follow from Lemma 6.38 below.

## 5.6 Algebraic $i$ -entropy

Let  $R$  be a ring. Here  $i : \mathbf{Mod}_R \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  is an invariant of  $\mathbf{Mod}_R$  (i.e.,  $i(0) = 0$  and  $i(M) = i(N)$  whenever  $M \cong N$ ). We consider the algebraic  $i$ -entropy introduced in [100], giving a functor  $\mathbf{sub}_i : \mathbf{Mod}_R \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ , to find  $\text{ent}_i$  from the general scheme.

Consider the following conditions:

- (a)  $i(N_1 + N_2) \leq i(N_1) + i(N_2)$  for all submodules  $N_1, N_2$  of  $M$ ;
- (b)  $i(M/N) \leq i(M)$  for every submodule  $N$  of  $M$ ;
- (b\*)  $i(N) \leq i(M)$  for every submodule  $N$  of  $M$ .

The invariant  $i$  is called *subadditive* if (a) and (b) hold, *additive* if equality holds in (a), *preadditive* if (a) and (b\*) hold.

For a right  $R$ -module  $M$ , denote by  $\mathcal{L}(M)$  the family of all its submodules and let

$$\mathcal{F}_i(M) = \{N \in \mathcal{L}(M) : i(N) < \infty\}.$$

**Definition 5.25.** Let  $i$  be a subadditive invariant,  $M$  be an  $R$ -module and  $\phi : M \rightarrow M$  an endomorphism. The *algebraic  $i$ -entropy of  $\phi$  with respect to  $N \in \mathcal{F}_i(M)$*  is

$$H_i(\phi, N) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{i(T_n(\phi, N))}{n};$$

The *algebraic  $i$ -entropy of  $\phi$*  is

$$\text{ent}_i(\phi) = \sup\{H_i(\phi, N) : N \in \mathcal{F}_i(M)\}.$$

For  $M \in \mathbf{Mod}_R$ ,  $\mathcal{L}(M)$  is a lattice with the operations of intersection and sum of two submodules, the bottom element is  $\{0\}$  and the top element is  $M$ . For a subadditive invariant  $i$  of  $\mathbf{Mod}_R$  and for a right  $R$ -module  $M$ , letting  $v = i$  on  $\mathcal{F}_i(M)$ , we have that:

- (i)  $(\mathcal{F}_i(M), +, i, \subseteq)$  is a normed subsemilattice of  $\mathcal{L}(M)$  with zero  $\{0\}$ ;
- (ii)  $v$  is subadditive, since  $i$  is subadditive; moreover,  $v$  is arithmetic.

The norm  $v$  is not necessarily monotone. On the other hand,

- (iii) if  $i$  is both subadditive and preadditive,  $v$  is monotone and d-monotone.

For every homomorphism  $\phi : M \rightarrow N$  in  $\mathbf{Mod}_R$ ,  $\mathcal{F}_i(\phi) : \mathcal{F}_i(M) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i(N)$ , defined by  $\mathcal{F}_i(\phi)(H) = \phi(H)$ , is a morphism in  $\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . Therefore, the assignments  $M \mapsto \mathcal{F}_i(M)$  and  $\phi \mapsto \mathcal{F}_i(\phi)$  define a covariant functor

$$\boxed{\mathbf{sub}_i : \mathbf{Mod}_R \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger.}$$

**Theorem 5.26.** Let  $i$  be a subadditive invariant. Let  $M$  be a right  $R$ -module and  $\phi : M \rightarrow M$  an endomorphism. Then  $H_i(\phi, N) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{sub}_i}(\phi, N)$  for every  $N \in \mathcal{F}_i(M)$ , and so

$$\text{ent}_i(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{sub}_i}(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Let  $N \in \mathcal{F}_i(G)$ . Since, for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,

$$T_n(\phi, N) = T_n(\mathcal{F}_i(\phi), N),$$

applying the definitions we can conclude that  $i(T_n(\phi, N)) = c_n(\mathcal{F}_i(\phi), N)$ . So,

$$H_i(\phi, N) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathcal{F}_i(\phi), N) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{sub}_i}(\phi, N),$$

and this concludes the proof. □

By the results in §4,  $\text{ent}_i$  is invariant under conjugation and under inversion, moreover it vanishes on quasi-periodic endomorphisms.

It is known that in general  $\text{ent}_i$  is not monotone for quotients. If  $i$  is preadditive, the covariant functor  $\mathbf{sub}_i$  sends monomorphisms to embeddings and so  $\text{ent}_i$  is monotone for invariant submodules. If  $i$  is both subadditive and preadditive then for every  $R$ -module  $M$  the norm of  $\mathbf{sub}_i(M)$  is d-monotone, so  $\text{ent}_i$  satisfies also the Logarithmic Law.

Under these assumptions also the weak Addition Theorem holds for the algebraic  $i$ -entropy. Indeed, for every  $R$ -module  $M$  and every endomorphism  $\phi : M \rightarrow M$ , the order given by the inclusion  $\subseteq$  is compatible with  $\mathcal{F}_i(\phi) : \mathcal{F}_i(M) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i(M)$ . So let  $N$  be another  $R$ -module and  $\psi : N \rightarrow N$  an endomorphism. Now  $\mathcal{F}_i(M) \oplus \mathcal{F}_i(N)$  is cofinal in  $\mathcal{F}_i(M \oplus N)$  with respect

to the order given by  $\subseteq$ , and the restriction of the norm of  $\mathcal{F}_i(M \oplus N)$  to  $\mathcal{F}_i(M) \oplus \mathcal{F}_i(N)$  coincides with  $v_\oplus$ . Therefore, Lemma 4.10 gives

$$\mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_i}(\phi \oplus \psi) = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_i}(\phi) + \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_i}(\psi),$$

so by Theorem 5.26 we have the weak Addition Theorem for the algebraic  $i$ -entropy.

It was proved in [96] that, if  $i$  is a length function (i.e.,  $i$  is upper continuous and additive) and  $i$  is discrete (i.e., the set of finite values of  $i$  is order-isomorphic to  $\mathbb{N}$ ), then  $\text{ent}_i$  is continuous for direct limits. More precisely, under these assumptions, for an  $R$ -module endomorphism  $\phi : M \rightarrow M$ , we have that

$$\text{ent}_i(\phi) = \sup_{F \in \mathcal{F}_i^f(M)} H_i(\phi, F),$$

where  $\mathcal{F}_i^f(M)$  is the subsemilattice of  $\mathcal{F}_i(M)$  of all finitely generated submodules of  $M$  with finite  $i$  (see [96]). Therefore, if one defines the functor

$$\text{sub}_i^f : \mathbf{Mod}_R \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$$

by  $M \mapsto \mathcal{F}_i^f(M)$  and  $\phi \mapsto \mathcal{F}_i^f(\phi)$  as above, one obtains

$$\text{ent}_i = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_i^f}.$$

Now  $\text{sub}_i^f$  sends direct limits to direct limits and so  $\text{ent}_i$  is continuous for direct limits by Corollary 4.9 and Theorem 5.26.

A clear example, studied in detail in [60], is given by vector spaces and  $i = \dim$  (see §5.9).

## 5.7 Adjoint algebraic entropy

Again we consider the category  $\mathbf{Grp}$  of all groups and their homomorphisms, giving a functor  $\text{sub}^* : \mathbf{Grp} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$  such that the entropy defined using this functor coincides with the adjoint algebraic entropy  $\text{ent}^*$  introduced in [41] for abelian groups. The abelian groups of zero adjoint entropy are studied in [101].

For a group  $G$  denote by  $\mathcal{C}(G)$  the family of all subgroups of finite index in  $G$ . For an endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$ ,  $N \in \mathcal{C}(G)$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , defined the  $n$ -th  $\phi$ -cotrajectory of  $N$  by

$$C_n(\phi, N) = N \cap \phi^{-1}(N) \cap \dots \cap \phi^{-n+1}(N).$$

Since the map induced by  $\phi^n$  on the partitions  $\{\phi^{-n}(N)g : g \in G\} \rightarrow \{Ng : g \in G\}$  is injective, it follows that  $\phi^{-n}(N) \in \mathcal{C}(G)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Therefore,  $C_n(\phi, N) \in \mathcal{C}(G)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , because  $\mathcal{C}(G)$  is closed under finite intersections.

**Definition 5.27.** Let  $G$  be a group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  an endomorphism. The *adjoint algebraic entropy of  $\phi$  with respect to  $N \in \mathcal{C}(G)$*  is

$$H^*(\phi, N) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log[G : C_n(\phi, N)]}{n}. \quad (5.16)$$

The *adjoint algebraic entropy of  $\phi$*  is

$$\text{ent}^*(\phi) = \sup\{H^*(\phi, N) : N \in \mathcal{C}(G)\}.$$

The pair  $(\mathcal{C}(G), \cap)$  is a subsemilattice of  $(\mathcal{L}(G), \cap)$ . For  $N \in \mathcal{C}(G)$ , let  $v(N) = \log[G : N]$ . Then:

- (i)  $(\mathcal{C}(G), \cap, v, \supseteq)$  is a normed semilattice with zero  $G$ ;
- (ii)  $v$  is subadditive, arithmetic, monotone and d-monotone.

For every group homomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow H$ , the map  $\mathcal{C}(\phi) : \mathcal{C}(H) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(G)$ , defined by  $N \mapsto \phi^{-1}(N)$ , is a morphism in  $\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . Then the assignments  $G \mapsto \mathcal{C}(G)$  and  $\phi \mapsto \mathcal{C}(\phi)$  define a contravariant functor

$$\boxed{\text{sub}^* : \mathbf{Grp} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger.}$$

**Theorem 5.28.** Let  $G$  be a group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  an endomorphism. Then  $H^*(\phi, N) = \mathbf{H}_{\text{sub}^*}(\phi, N)$  for every  $N \in \mathcal{C}(G)$ , and so

$$\text{ent}^*(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}^*}(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Let  $N \in \mathcal{C}(G)$ . Since, for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,

$$C_n(\phi, N) = T_n(\mathcal{C}(\phi), N),$$

the definitions yield the equality  $\log[G : C_n(\phi, N)] = c_n(\mathcal{C}(\phi), N)$ . So,

$$H^*(\phi, N) = h_{\mathcal{C}}(\mathcal{C}(\phi), N) = \mathbf{H}_{\text{sub}^*}(\phi, N),$$

and this concludes the proof. □

The contravariant functor  $\mathbf{sub}^*$  need not send the subgroup inclusion  $j : H \hookrightarrow G$  to a surjective map  $\mathcal{C}(j) : \mathcal{C}(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(H)$ ; indeed, take an abelian group  $H$  with  $\mathcal{C}(H) \neq \{H\}$  and  $G$  its divisible hull (so  $\mathcal{C}(G) = \{G\}$ ). This fact suggests that the adjoint algebraic entropy is not monotone under taking restrictions to invariant subgroups; indeed, this is the case as shown by a counterexample in [41, Example 4.8].

Moreover, the adjoint algebraic entropy is not continuous for inverse limits (see [41]).

On the other hand, since the contravariant functor  $\mathbf{sub}^*$  takes factors in  $\mathbf{Grp}$  to embeddings in  $\mathfrak{L}$ , by the properties proved in §4 we have automatically that  $\mathbf{ent}^*$  is invariant under conjugation and inversion, it is monotone for factors, it satisfies the Logarithmic Law and it vanishes on quasi-periodic endomorphisms.

As in the case of the algebraic entropy, the weak Addition Theorem holds for the adjoint algebraic entropy. Indeed, for every group  $G$  and every endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$ , the order given by the containment  $\supseteq$  is compatible with  $\mathcal{C}(\phi) : \mathcal{C}(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(G)$ . So let  $\psi : H \rightarrow H$  be another group endomorphism. Then  $\mathcal{C}(G) \oplus \mathcal{C}(H)$  is cofinal in  $\mathcal{C}(G \times H)$  with respect to  $\supseteq$  and the norm of  $\mathcal{C}(G \times H)$  restricted to  $\mathcal{C}(G) \oplus \mathcal{C}(H)$  coincides with  $v_\oplus$ . So Lemma 4.10 applies and together with Theorem 5.28 gives

$$\mathbf{ent}^*(\phi \times \psi) = \mathbf{ent}^*(\phi) + \mathbf{ent}^*(\psi).$$

There exists also a version of the adjoint algebraic entropy for modules, namely the *adjoint algebraic  $i$ -entropy*  $\mathbf{ent}_i^*$  (see [108]), obtained by a preadditive invariant  $i : \mathbf{Mod}_R \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  for a ring  $R$ . We omit the detailed outline of this case that can be treated analogously.

## 5.8 Topological entropy for linearly topologized precompact groups

Let  $(G, \tau)$  be a linearly topologized precompact group, i.e.,  $(G, \tau)$  has a local base  $\mathcal{V}_G(1)$  at 1 consisting of open normal subgroups of  $G$  of finite index. Each  $V \in \mathcal{V}_G(1)$  defines a finite open cover  $\mathcal{U}_V = \{x \cdot V\}_{x \in G} \in \mathbf{fin-cov}(G)$  with  $N(\mathcal{U}_V) = [G : V]$ . Moreover, let

$$\mathbf{fin-cov}_s(G) = \{\mathcal{U}_V : V \in \mathcal{V}_G(1)\} \subseteq \mathbf{fin-cov}(G).$$

We first prove the following useful claim.

**Claim 5.29.** *Let  $G$  be a linearly topologized precompact group,  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  a continuous endomorphism. Then  $\mathbf{fin-cov}_s(G)$  is a  $\mathbf{fin-cov}(\phi)$ -invariant cofinal subsemigroup of  $\mathbf{fin-cov}(G)$ .*

*Proof.* Take  $\mathcal{U} \in \mathbf{fin-cov}(G)$ . Let  $K$  be the compact completion of  $G$ . There exists  $\mathcal{W} \in \mathbf{fin-cov}(K)$  such that

$$\mathcal{U} = \{G \cap W : W \in \mathcal{W}\}.$$

Since  $\mathcal{W}$  is a finite open cover of  $K$  and since  $K$  is zero dimensional (being linearly topologized), there is a finite refinement  $\mathcal{V}$  of  $\mathcal{W}$  that is an open partition of  $K$ . Then each  $V \in \mathcal{V}$  is a clopen set of  $K$ . Hence, there exists a finite set  $\{N_{i,V} : i \in I_V\}$  of open subgroups of  $K$  and (finitely many) cosets  $x_{i,V}N_{i,V}$  such that

$$V = \bigcup_{i \in I_V} x_{i,V}N_{i,V}$$

(note that the enumeration  $i \mapsto N_{i,V}$  need not be one-to-one). Then

$$N = \bigcap_{V \in \mathcal{V}} \bigcap_{i \in I_V} N_{i,V}$$

is still an open subgroup of  $K$  as the intersection is finite. The finite cover

$$\mathcal{U}_N^K = \{y \cdot N\}_{y \in K} \in \mathbf{fin-cov}(K)$$

of  $K$  refines  $\mathcal{V}$ . Therefore, for  $N \cap G \in \mathcal{V}_G(1)$ ,  $\mathcal{U}_{N \cap G}$  is a refinement of  $\mathcal{U}$ .  $\square$

The following result was proved in [35] under the stronger hypothesis that  $G$  is a totally disconnected compact group (so,  $h_{\mathbf{fin-top}}$  coincides with  $h_{\mathit{top}}$ ).

**Proposition 5.30.** *Let  $G$  be a linearly topologized precompact group,  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  a continuous endomorphism. Then*

$$h_{\mathbf{fin-top}}(\phi) = \sup\{H^*(\phi, U) : U \in \mathcal{V}_G(1)\}.$$

*Proof.* Each  $V \in \mathcal{V}_G(1)$  defines a finite cover  $\mathcal{U}_V = \{x \cdot V\}_{x \in G} \in \mathbf{fin-cov}(G)$  with  $N(\mathcal{U}_V) = [G : V]$ . Clearly,

$$\phi^{-i}(\mathcal{U}_V) = \mathcal{U}_{\phi^{-i}(V)} \text{ and } \mathcal{U}_{V_1} \vee \mathcal{U}_{V_2} = \mathcal{U}_{V_1 \cap V_2}. \quad (5.17)$$

for  $i \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $V_1, V_2 \in \mathcal{V}_G(1)$ . Therefore,

$$\mathcal{U}_V \vee \phi^{-1}(\mathcal{U}_V) \vee \dots \vee \phi^{-n+1}(\mathcal{U}_V) = \mathcal{U}_{C_n(\phi, V)}.$$

for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . This gives

$$N(\mathcal{U}_V \vee \phi^{-1}(\mathcal{U}_V) \vee \dots \vee \phi^{-n+1}(\mathcal{U}_V)) = \log[G : C_n(\phi, V)].$$

Then, for every  $V \in \mathcal{V}_G(1)$ ,

$$H_{\mathbf{fin-top}}(\phi, \mathcal{U}_V) = H^*(\phi, V).$$

Now it suffices to note that, by Claim 5.29, Lemma 3.7 and Theorem 5.14, we have that

$$h_{\mathbf{fin-top}}(\phi) = \sup\{H_{\mathbf{fin-top}}(\phi, \mathcal{U}_V) : V \in \mathcal{V}_G(1)\},$$

and this concludes the proof.  $\square$

For a linearly topologized precompact group  $G$ , let  $v(V) = \log[G : V]$  for every  $V \in \mathcal{V}_G(1)$ . Then:

- (i)  $(\mathcal{V}_G(1), \cap, v, \supseteq)$  is a normed semilattice with zero  $G$ ;
- (ii)  $v$  is subadditive, arithmetic, monotone and d-monotone.

For a continuous homomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow H$  between linearly topologized precompact groups, the map  $\mathcal{V}_H(1) \rightarrow \mathcal{V}_G(1)$ , defined by  $V \mapsto \phi^{-1}(V)$ , is a morphism in  $\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . Letting also  $\mathbf{sub}_o^*(G) = \mathcal{V}_G(1)$ , this defines a contravariant functor

$$\boxed{\mathbf{sub}_o^* : \mathbf{LPG} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger},$$

which satisfies  $\mathbf{sub}_o^* = \mathbf{sub}^* \circ U$ , where  $U : \mathbf{LPG} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grp}$  is the standard forgetful functor. Therefore the functor  $\mathbf{sub}_o^*$  has the properties of the functor  $\mathbf{sub}^*$  mentioned in §5.7 (see Remark 5.33 for the properties of the entropy  $h_{\mathbf{fin-top}}$ ).

It is easy to deduce the following result from Proposition 5.30.

**Theorem 5.31.** *Let  $G$  be a linearly topologized precompact group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  a continuous endomorphism. Then*

$$h_{\mathbf{fin-top}}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{sub}_o^*}(\phi).$$

**Remark 5.32.** One can apply Proposition 5.30, Claim 5.29 and Theorem 5.31 to totally disconnected compact groups, since they are known to be linearly topologized by a theorem of van Dantzig. Consider the restriction of the functor  $\mathbf{sub}_o^*$  to the category  $\mathbf{TdCG}$ . As noticed above,  $h_{top}$  coincides with  $h_{\mathbf{fin-top}}$  on  $\mathbf{TdCG}$ . Therefore,  $h_{top}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{sub}_o^*}(\phi)$  for any continuous endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  of a totally disconnected compact group  $G$ .

**Remark 5.33.** As mentioned in §5.3,  $h_{\mathbf{fin-top}}$  is invariant under conjugation and invariant under inversion, moreover it satisfies the Logarithmic Law and it vanishes on quasi-periodic continuous selfmaps when considered on the category  $\mathbf{Top}$ . Moreover, due to Theorem 5.14 monotonicity under taking closed invariant subspaces and factors is also available. It is not hard to see that the passage to dense invariant subgroups in  $\mathbf{LPG}$  actually preserves the entropy  $h_{\mathbf{fin-top}}$ , so in conjunction with the above mentioned properties in  $\mathbf{Top}$ , one has monotonicity under taking arbitrary invariant subgroups in  $\mathbf{LPG}$ .

## 5.9 Algebraic and topological entropy for vector spaces

Fix a discrete field  $\mathbb{K}$ . The algebraic dimension entropy for discrete  $\mathbb{K}$ -vector spaces (see Definition 5.34) is a particular case of the  $i$ -entropy recalled in §5.6 (for the only invariant  $i$  available for  $\mathbb{K}$ -vector spaces, namely the dimension), and was studied in detail in [60]. For every  $\mathbb{K}$ -vector space  $V$  let  $\mathcal{F}_d(V)$  be the family of all finite-dimensional linear subspaces  $N$  of  $V$ .

**Definition 5.34.** Let  $V$  be a vector space over  $\mathbb{K}$  and  $\phi : V \rightarrow V$  an endomorphism. The *algebraic dimension entropy* of  $\phi$  with respect to  $N \in \mathcal{F}_d(V)$  is

$$H_{\dim}(\phi, N) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\dim T_n(\phi, N)}{n};$$

the *algebraic dimension entropy* of  $\phi$  is

$$\mathbf{ent}_{\dim}(\phi) = \sup\{H_{\dim}(\phi, N) : N \in \mathcal{F}_d(V)\}.$$

For a  $\mathbb{K}$ -vector space  $V$  and  $v = \dim$  we have that:

- (i)  $(\mathcal{F}_d(V), +, \dim, \subseteq)$  is a normed semilattice with zero  $\{0\}$ ;
- (ii)  $v$  is subadditive, arithmetic, monotone and d-monotone.

For every morphism  $\phi : V \rightarrow W$  in  $\mathbf{Mod}_{\mathbb{K}}$ , the map  $\mathcal{F}_d(\phi) : \mathcal{F}_d(V) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_d(W)$ , defined by  $N \mapsto \phi(N)$ , is a morphism in  $\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . Therefore, as a particular case of what is described in §5.6, the assignments  $V \mapsto \mathcal{F}_d(V)$  and  $\phi \mapsto \mathcal{F}_d(\phi)$  define a covariant functor

$$\boxed{\mathbf{sub}_{\dim} : \mathbf{Mod}_{\mathbb{K}} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger}.$$

Then, as a particular case of Theorem 5.26, we have that

$$\mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{sub}_{\dim}} = \mathbf{ent}_{\dim}. \tag{5.18}$$

As described in detail in §5.6, it can be deduced by the results in §4 that  $\mathbf{ent}_{\dim}$  is invariant under conjugation and under inversion, monotone under taking quotients and invariant linear subspaces, satisfies the Logarithmic Law and the weak Addition Theorem, moreover it is continuous for direct limits. This entropy can be computed also as follows.

**Remark 5.35.** Every flow  $\phi : V \rightarrow V$  of  $\mathbf{Mod}_{\mathbb{K}}$  can be considered as a  $\mathbb{K}[X]$ -module  $V_\phi$  letting  $X$  act on  $V$  as  $\phi$ . Then  $\mathbf{ent}_{\dim}(\phi)$  coincides with the rank of the  $\mathbb{K}[X]$ -module  $V_\phi$ .

In Lefschetz duality (see [83]), the dual vector space of a discrete vector space is linearly compact. Recall that, given a linearly topologized vector space  $V$  over the discrete field  $\mathbb{K}$  (i.e.,  $V$  has a local base at 0 consisting of linear subspaces), a *linear variety*  $M$  of  $V$  is a coset  $v + W$ , where  $v \in V$  and  $W$  is a linear subspace of  $V$ . A linear variety  $M = v + W$  is said to be *open* (respectively, *closed*) in  $V$  if  $W$  is open (respectively, closed) in  $V$ . A linearly topologized vector space  $V$  over  $\mathbb{K}$  is *linearly compact* if any collection of closed linear varieties of  $V$  with the finite intersection property has non-empty intersection (equivalently, any collection of open linear varieties of  $V$  with the finite intersection property has non-empty intersection) (see [83]).

In [21] the topological counterpart of the algebraic dimension entropy is introduced and studied for linearly compact vector spaces. For a linearly compact vector space  $V$  denote by  $\mathcal{F}_o(V)$  the family of all open linear subspaces  $U$  of  $V$  (since  $V/U$  is discrete and linearly compact, we have that  $V/U$  has finite dimension).

**Definition 5.36.** Let  $V$  be a linearly compact vector space over  $\mathbb{K}$  and  $\phi : V \rightarrow V$  a continuous endomorphism. The *topological dimension entropy of  $\phi$  with respect to  $N \in \mathcal{F}_o(G)$*  is

$$H_{\dim}^*(\phi, N) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\dim(V/C_n(\phi, N))}{n}.$$

The *topological dimension entropy of  $\phi$*  is

$$\text{ent}_{\dim}^*(\phi) = \sup\{H_{\dim}^*(\phi, N) : N \in \mathcal{F}_o(G)\}.$$

The pair  $(\mathcal{F}_o(V), \cap)$  is a semilattice. For  $N \in \mathcal{F}_o(V)$ , let  $v(N) = \dim(V/N)$ . Then:

- (i)  $(\mathcal{F}(V), \cap, v, \supseteq)$  is a normed semilattice with zero  $V$ ;
- (ii)  $v$  is subadditive, arithmetic, monotone and d-monotone.

Let  $\mathbf{LCVect}_{\mathbb{K}}$  be the category of all linearly compact vector spaces over the discrete field  $\mathbb{K}$ . For every continuous homomorphism  $\phi : V \rightarrow W$ , the map  $\mathcal{F}_o(\phi) : \mathcal{F}_o(W) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_o(V)$ , defined by  $N \mapsto \phi^{-1}(N)$ , is a morphism in  $\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . Then the assignments  $V \mapsto \mathcal{F}_o(V)$  and  $\phi \mapsto \mathcal{F}_o(\phi)$  define a contravariant functor

$$\boxed{\text{sub}_{\dim}^* : \mathbf{LCVect}_{\mathbb{K}} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger.}$$

Analogously to Theorem 5.28, it is possible to prove that, if  $V$  is a linearly compact vector spaces over  $\mathbb{K}$  and  $\phi : V \rightarrow V$  is a continuous endomorphism, then

$$H_{\dim}^*(\phi, N) = \mathbf{H}_{\text{sub}_{\dim}^*}(\phi, N)$$

for every  $N \in \mathcal{F}_o(V)$ , and so

$$\text{ent}_{\dim}^*(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_{\dim}^*}(\phi). \quad (5.19)$$

As described in §5.7, it can be deduced by the results in §4, that  $\text{ent}_{\dim}^*$  is invariant under conjugation and under inversion, monotone under taking quotients, satisfies the Logarithmic Law and the weak Addition Theorem, and it vanishes on quasi-periodic continuous endomorphisms. Since the functor  $\text{sub}_{\dim}^*$  sends inclusions to quotient maps, it can be deduced from the results in §4 that  $\text{ent}_{\dim}^*$  is also monotone under taking closed invariant linear subspaces and it is continuous for inverse limits (for the latter property one can use the same argument as in the case of compact topological space, see the text preceding Proposition 5.9).

**Remark 5.37.** In [20] and [21], the algebraic and the topological dimension entropy are studied in the more general case of continuous endomorphisms  $\phi : V \rightarrow V$  of locally linearly compact vector spaces  $V$ ; a linearly topologized vector space  $V$  over a discrete field  $\mathbb{K}$  is *locally linearly compact* if it admits a local base at 0 consisting of linearly compact open linear subspaces (see [83]).

It is easy to see that for a flow  $(V, \phi)$  of  $\mathbf{Mod}_{\mathbb{K}}$  and  $N \in \mathcal{F}_d(V)$ , one has

$$H_{\dim}(\phi, N) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\dim(T_n(\phi, N)/N)}{n}$$

for the algebraic dimension entropy recalled in Definition 5.34. In [20] this limit is used as a definition of the algebraic dimension entropy of a flow  $(V, \phi)$  with  $V$  a locally linearly compact vector space and  $N$  an open linearly compact linear subspace of  $V$ .

Analogously, for a flow  $(V, \phi)$  of  $\mathbf{LCVect}_{\mathbb{K}}$  and  $N \in \mathcal{F}_o(V)$ , one can obtain the topological dimension entropy recalled in Definition 5.36 as

$$H_{\dim}^*(\phi, N) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\dim(N/C_n(\phi, N))}{n}.$$

In [21] this limit is used as a definition of the topological dimension entropy of a flow  $(V, \phi)$  with  $V$  a locally linearly compact vector space  $V$  and  $N$  an open linearly compact linear subspace of  $V$ .

As it occurs for the intrinsic algebraic entropy, the algebraic and the topological dimension entropy for locally linearly compact vector spaces do not fit our general scheme.

## 6 Bridge Theorems

In this section we study in detail the notion of Bridge Theorem for functorial entropies, pointing out various situations where such a phenomenon arises.

We start by introducing appropriate weaker forms of isomorphisms in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ , in order to have a general scheme that covers all possible Bridge Theorems, including the inspiring one (namely, Theorem 1.3 above for torsion abelian groups and totally disconnected compact abelian groups; see also Theorems 6.25 and 6.27 below).

### 6.1 Uniform and weak isomorphisms in $\mathfrak{S}^*$

The property of Invariance under conjugation in  $\mathfrak{S}$  ensures the invariance of the semigroup entropy for isomorphic flows of  $\mathfrak{S}$ , but isomorphisms in  $\mathfrak{S}$  that are not easy to come by. Our aim in this subsection is to replace isomorphisms in  $\mathfrak{S}$  by (appropriate) isomorphisms in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ .

The isomorphisms  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  in  $\mathfrak{S}$  must be norm-preserving, i.e.,  $v(\phi(x)) = v(x)$  for all  $x \in S$ . Since this property is not available in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ , we introduce the following notion providing a partial remedy to this problem.

**Definition 6.1.** A homomorphism  $\alpha : (S, v) \rightarrow (S', v')$  in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  is a *uniform isomorphism with coefficient*  $0 < r \in \mathbb{R}$  if  $\alpha$  is a semigroup isomorphism and  $v'(\alpha(x)) = rv(x)$  for every  $x \in S$ .

If  $\alpha : S \rightarrow S'$  is a uniform isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  with coefficient  $r$ , then  $\alpha^{-1} : S' \rightarrow S$  is a uniform isomorphism as well and has coefficient  $r^{-1}$ .

**Lemma 6.2.** *A uniform isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  with coefficient  $r$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$  if and only if  $r = 1$ .*

For a normed semigroup  $S$  and a normed preordered semigroup  $T$ , we give a weaker notion than that of uniform isomorphism:

**Definition 6.3.** A homomorphism  $\alpha : S \rightarrow T$  in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ , where  $T$  is a normed preordered semigroup, is a *weak isomorphism with coefficient*  $0 < r \in \mathbb{R}$  if  $\alpha : S \rightarrow \alpha(S)$  is a uniform isomorphism with coefficient  $r$  and  $\alpha(S)$  is a cofinal subsemigroup of  $T$ .

Every semigroup admits the discrete preorder, in this case ‘‘cofinal’’ in the above definition means equal.

A uniform isomorphism is always a semigroup isomorphism, whereas a weak isomorphism is a semigroup isomorphism if and only if it is a uniform isomorphism (with the same coefficient).

Easy examples show that the Invariance under conjugation, which holds in  $\mathfrak{S}$ , drastically fails in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ . Nevertheless, one can obtain a sharp substitute in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  as follows.

**Proposition 6.4.** *Let  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  be an endomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ . If  $\alpha : S \rightarrow T$  is a uniform isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  with coefficient  $r > 0$ , then:*

- (a)  $\psi = \alpha \circ \phi \circ \alpha^{-1} : T \rightarrow T$  is an endomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ ;
- (b)  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi) = r h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$ .

*Proof.* (a) Follows from the definition of uniform isomorphism and contractive endomorphism.

(b) Fix  $y \in T$  and find  $x \in S$  with  $y = \alpha(x)$ . Then  $c_n(\psi, y) = r c_n(\phi, x)$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , and so  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi, y) = r \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x)$ . So  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi, y) \leq r \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x)$ . Therefore,

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi) \leq r \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi).$$

Analogously, using  $\alpha^{-1}$  in place of  $\alpha$ , one can prove that

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi) \leq r^{-1} \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi).$$

This concludes the proof. □

A weaker form of the Invariance under conjugation property remains true also considering weak isomorphisms in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ :

**Corollary 6.5.** *Let  $\phi : S \rightarrow S$  be an endomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ . Let  $T$  be a normed semigroup with a preorder compatible with the endomorphism  $\psi : T \rightarrow T$  in  $\mathfrak{S}$ . If  $\alpha : S \rightarrow T$  is a weak isomorphism with coefficient  $0 < r \in \mathbb{R}$  and such that  $\psi \circ \alpha = \alpha \circ \phi$ , then:*

- (a)  $\alpha(S)$  is  $\psi$ -invariant;
- (b)  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi) = r h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$ .

*Proof.* (a) Follows immediately from the hypothesis.

(b) By Lemma 3.7,  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi) = h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi \upharpoonright_{\alpha(S)})$ . Moreover,  $h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\psi \upharpoonright_{\alpha(S)}) = r \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$  by Proposition 6.4. □

We will need the following property.

**Lemma 6.6.** *Let  $S \in \mathfrak{S}$  and  $S', S'' \in \mathfrak{S}_p$ . If  $\alpha : S \rightarrow S'$  is a weak isomorphism with coefficient  $r > 0$  and  $\beta : S' \rightarrow S''$  is a monotone weak isomorphism with coefficient  $s > 0$ , then  $\beta \circ \alpha$  is a weak isomorphism with coefficient  $rs$ .*

*Proof.* Clearly,  $\beta \circ \alpha : S \rightarrow \beta(\alpha(S))$  is a uniform isomorphism with coefficient  $rs$ . That  $\beta(\alpha(S))$  is cofinal in  $S''$  follows from the monotonicity of  $\beta$ , the cofinality of  $\alpha(S)$  in  $S'$  and the cofinality of  $\beta(S')$  in  $S''$ . □

## 6.2 General scheme

The Bridge Theorem from Definition 1.6 is a property of a functor  $\varepsilon : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}_2$  (with respect to entropies  $h_1 : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  and  $h_2 : \mathfrak{X}_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$ ). It is natural to expect that it is invariant under natural equivalence of functors, as we observe now.

**Remark 6.7.** Let  $\varepsilon, \varepsilon' : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}_2$  be naturally equivalent functors and let  $h_1 : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  and  $h_2 : \mathfrak{X}_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  be entropies. For  $C > 0$ , the pair  $(h_1, h_2)$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon, C}$  if and only if  $(h_1, h_2)$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon', C}$ .

Throughout this section  $\varepsilon : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}_2$  is a functor and  $\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2}$  are functorial entropies arising from functors  $F_1 : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}_p$  and  $F_2 : \mathfrak{X}_2 \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}_p$  such that  $F_1$  and  $F_2\varepsilon$  are simultaneously covariant or contravariant. Our aim is to verify whether the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies the Bridge Theorem. To do this, it seems natural to consider the following notion which yields a higher level of connection between the entropies  $\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2}$  than the one given by the Bridge Theorem, as we shall see in Theorem 6.9.

**Definition 6.8.** The pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies the *Strong Bridge Theorem with respect to  $\varepsilon$  with coefficient*  $0 < C \in \mathbb{R}$  (briefly,  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}$ ) if there exists a natural transformation

$$\eta : F_1 \rightarrow F_2\varepsilon$$

such that  $\eta_X : F_1(X) \rightarrow F_2\varepsilon(X)$  is a uniform isomorphism with coefficient  $C$ .

If each  $\eta_X : F_1(X) \rightarrow F_2\varepsilon(X)$  is only a weak isomorphism with coefficient  $C$ , we say that  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies the *Strong<sup>w</sup> Bridge Theorem with coefficient  $C$*  (briefly,  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}^w$ ).

In case  $C = 1$  we write simply  $SBT_{\varepsilon}$  (respectively,  $SBT_{\varepsilon}^w$ ) and say that  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies the *Strong Bridge Theorem* (respectively, the *Strong<sup>w</sup> Bridge Theorem*).

As the next diagram shows, this definition provides two levels of a sort of “functorial Bridge Theorem”, that connects both functors  $F_1, F_2$ .

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathfrak{X}_1 & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{h_1 = \mathbf{h}_{F_1}} \\ \xrightarrow{F_1} \\ \xrightarrow{\eta} \\ \xrightarrow{F_2} \\ \xrightarrow{h_2 = \mathbf{h}_{F_2}} \end{array} & \mathfrak{S}_p \\
 \varepsilon \downarrow & & \downarrow h_{\mathfrak{S}} \\
 \mathfrak{X}_2 & & \mathbb{R}_+
 \end{array} \tag{6.1}$$

In the next theorem we show that, roughly speaking,

$$SBT_{\varepsilon, C} \Rightarrow SBT_{\varepsilon, C}^w \Rightarrow BT_{\varepsilon, C},$$

in particular, both the Strong Bridge Theorem and the Strong<sup>w</sup> Bridge Theorem yield the Bridge Theorem.

**Theorem 6.9.** *In the above notation, we have that:*

- (a) if  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}$  then  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}^w$ ;
- (b) if  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}^w$  then  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon, C}$ .

In particular, if the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon}$  then  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon}^w$ , and if  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon}^w$  then  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon}$ .

*Proof.* (a) Follows from the fact that a uniform isomorphism is also a weak isomorphism.

(b) If  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}$ , in view of Corollary 6.5 we have that

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F_2\varepsilon(\phi)) = C \cdot h_{\mathfrak{S}}(F_1(\phi))$$

for every endomorphism  $\phi$  in  $\mathfrak{X}_1$ . This means that  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon, C}$ .  $\square$

**Remark 6.10.** In the above notation, even when the target of the functors  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  is the category  $\mathfrak{S}$ , the existence of a natural transformation  $\eta : F_1 \rightarrow F_2\varepsilon$  in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  need not ensure that this natural transformation is in  $\mathfrak{S}$  (i.e., the morphism  $\eta_X : F_1(X) \rightarrow F_2\varepsilon(X)$  ensured by  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ , but need not be an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ ). According to Lemma 6.2,  $\eta_X : F_1(X) \rightarrow F_2\varepsilon(X)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$  if and only if  $C = 1$  (i.e.,  $SBT_{\varepsilon}$  holds).

In the specific Bridge Theorems stated below, (at least)  $SBT_{\varepsilon}^w$  is verified in many cases, but actually  $SBT_{\varepsilon}$  is available in most of those cases.

Our choice to use  $\mathfrak{S}_p$  as a target is motivated by the fact that the definition of  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}^w$  makes recourse to a preorder on the semigroups (whereas  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}^w$  perfectly works also for functors  $F_1 : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$  and  $F_2 : \mathfrak{X}_2 \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$ ). Let us point out that this choice is quite painless since in all cases considered in §5 the functors have  $\mathfrak{S}_p$  as a target with the exception of **cm**; more precisely, with the exception of **pet**, the targets are the subcategories  $\mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^{\dagger}$  and  $\mathfrak{L}^{\dagger}$  of  $\mathfrak{S}_p$ .

**Remark 6.11.** Assume that  $h_1 : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}_p$  and  $h_2 : \mathfrak{X}_2 \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}_p$  are entropies and that the functor  $\varepsilon : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}_2$  is invertible.

- (a) Then  $(h_1, h_2)$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon, C}$  with  $0 < C \in \mathbb{R}$  if and only if  $(h_2, h_1)$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon^{-1}, C^{-1}}$ .
- (b) Unlike the Strong<sup>w</sup> Bridge Theorem  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}^w$ , the Strong Bridge Theorem  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}$  can be “inverted” in the following more precise sense. If  $h_1 = \mathbf{h}_{F_1}$  and  $h_2 = \mathbf{h}_{F_2}$  for functors  $F_1 : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$  and  $F_2 : \mathfrak{X}_2 \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$ , then  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}$  if and only if  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_2}, \mathbf{h}_{F_1})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon^{-1}, C^{-1}}$ .

The following facts are trivial, yet it is worth noting the preservation of entropy in these cases. Moreover, we see in §6.3 an interesting occurrence of the case of the forgetful functor and one of the identity functor.

**Example 6.12.** Let  $\varepsilon : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}_2$  be a functor and  $h : \mathfrak{X}_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  an entropy. Assume that  $\varepsilon$  is either an inclusion functor or a forgetful functor. In the first case one can consider the restriction  $h : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  keeping the same notation *par abus de language*. Clearly, the pair  $(h, h)$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon}$ . Moreover, if  $h = \mathbf{h}_F$  for some functor  $F : \mathfrak{X}_2 \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$ , then  $(\mathbf{h}_{F\varepsilon}, \mathbf{h}_F)$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon}$ . All this applies also when  $\varepsilon$  is a forgetful functor.

**Lemma 6.13.** *In the above notation, let  $\mathfrak{X} = \mathfrak{X}_1 = \mathfrak{X}_2$  and  $\varepsilon = id_{\mathfrak{X}}$ .*

- (a) If  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  are naturally equivalent, then  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{id_{\mathfrak{X}}}$ .
- (b) If  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{id_{\mathfrak{X}}}^w$ , then  $\mathbf{h}_{F_1} = \mathbf{h}_{F_2}$ .

*Proof.* (a) is obvious and (b) follows directly from Corollary 6.5.  $\square$

In particular, given an entropy function  $h : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$ , if  $h = \mathbf{h}_{F_1}$  for some functor  $F_1 : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$  and  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{id_{\mathfrak{X}}}^w$  for some other functor  $F_2 : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}$ , then  $h = \mathbf{h}_{F_2}$ , and so one has an alternative description of  $h$  as a functorial entropy. A relevant example to this effect is the following.

**Example 6.14.** (a) Consider the functors  $\mathbf{fin}\text{-cov} : \mathbf{CTop} \rightarrow \mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^{\dagger}$  and  $\mathbf{cov} : \mathbf{CTop} \rightarrow \mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^{\dagger}$ . In view of Remark 5.11, the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{fin}\text{-cov}}, \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{cov}})$  satisfies  $SBT_{id_{\mathbf{CTop}}}^w$ . In particular, if  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  is a morphism in  $\mathbf{CTop}$ , then  $h_{\mathbf{fin}\text{-top}}(\phi) = h_{\mathbf{top}}(\phi)$  by Lemma 6.13(b).

- (b) Consider **TdCG** and the functors

$$\mathbf{cov} : \mathbf{TdCG} \rightarrow \mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^{\dagger} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{sub}_o^* : \mathbf{TdCG} \rightarrow \mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^{\dagger}.$$

Let  $\phi : K \rightarrow K$  be a morphism in **TdCG**. By Theorem 5.8, we have that  $h_{\mathbf{top}}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{cov}}(\phi)$ . We see that



the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_o^*}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{cov}})$  satisfies  $SBT_{id_{\mathbf{TopCG}}}^w$ ,

and hence  $h_{top}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_o^*}(\phi)$  by Lemma 6.13(b).

To verify that  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_o^*}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{cov}})$  satisfies  $SBT_{id_{\mathbf{TopCG}}}^w$ , let

$$\eta_K : \mathcal{V}_K(1) \rightarrow \mathbf{cov}(K), \quad V \mapsto \mathcal{U}_V,$$

where we recall that  $\mathcal{U}_V = \{xV : x \in K\}$ . Hence,  $\eta_K(\mathcal{V}_K(1)) = \mathbf{fin-cov}_s(K)$ . By Claim 5.29,  $\mathbf{fin-cov}_s(K)$  is cofinal in  $\mathbf{fin-cov}(K)$ , while  $\mathbf{fin-cov}(K)$  is cofinal in  $\mathbf{cov}(K)$  since  $K$  is compact (see Remark 5.11); therefore,  $\eta_K(\mathcal{V}_K(1))$  is cofinal in  $\mathbf{cov}(K)$ . Moreover,  $\eta_K : \mathcal{V}_K(1) \rightarrow \mathbf{fin-cov}_s(K)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$  since

$$v(V) = \log[K : V] = \log N(\mathcal{U}_V).$$

Finally,  $\eta : \text{sub}_o^* \rightarrow \mathbf{cov}$  is a natural transformation, since  $\phi^{-1}(\mathcal{U}_V) = \mathcal{U}_{\phi^{-1}(V)}$  for every  $V \in \mathcal{V}_K(1)$ .

The next result extends the observation in Remark 6.7 to Strong Bridge Theorems.

**Lemma 6.15.** *Let  $\varepsilon, \varepsilon' : \mathfrak{X}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{X}_2$  be naturally equivalent functors and  $C > 0$ . Then:*

- (a)  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}^w$  if and only if  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon', C}^w$ ;
- (b)  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon, C}$  if and only if  $(\mathbf{h}_{F_1}, \mathbf{h}_{F_2})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon', C}$ .

*Proof.* To prove (a) apply Lemma 6.6, while (b) follows from the definitions. □

### 6.3 Preservation of entropy along (co)reflections and forgetful functors

In Lemma 6.13 we have seen that two distinct realizations of an entropy  $\mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  as a functorial entropy can be seen as a Strong Bridge Theorem with respect to the identity functor. In this section we push further this line with respect to (co)reflections and forgetful functors.

In the next remark we briefly discuss the connection between measure entropy and topological entropy.

**Remark 6.16.** If  $X$  is a compact metric space and  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  is a continuous surjective selfmap, by Krylov-Bogolyubov Theorem [12] there exists some  $\phi$ -invariant Borel probability measure  $\mu$  on  $X$  (i.e., making  $\phi : (X, \mu) \rightarrow (X, \mu)$  measure preserving). Denote by  $h_\mu$  the measure entropy with respect to  $\mu$ . The inequality  $h_\mu(\phi) \leq h_{top}(\phi)$  for every  $\mu$  is due to Goodwyn [72]. Moreover, the Variational Principle (see [71] and [112, Theorem 8.6]) gives the ultimate connection between these two entropies:

$$h_{top}(\phi) = \sup\{h_\mu(\phi) : \mu \text{ } \phi\text{-invariant measure on } X\}.$$

In the case of a compact group  $K$  and a continuous surjective endomorphism  $\phi : K \rightarrow K$ , the uniqueness of the Haar measure of  $K$  implies that  $\phi$  is measure preserving, as noted by Halmos [74]. In particular, both  $h_{top}$  and  $h_{mes}$  are available for surjective continuous endomorphisms of compact groups, and they coincide as proved by Stoyanov [105] (see [13] for metrizable compact groups).

Denote by  $\mathbf{CG}$  the category of all compact groups and continuous homomorphisms, and by  $\mathbf{CG}_e$  the non-full subcategory of  $\mathbf{CG}$  having as morphisms all continuous surjective homomorphisms in  $\mathbf{CG}$ . Then the above fact can be stated as a Bridge Theorem as follows:

**Theorem 6.17.** *Consider the forgetful functor  $V : \mathbf{CG}_e \rightarrow \mathbf{Mes}$ . The pair  $(h_{top}, h_{mes})$  satisfies  $BT_V$ .*

We are not aware if this Bridge Theorem holds true at a ‘‘higher level’’, namely as a Strong Bridge Theorem:

**Question 6.18.** *Does the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{cov}}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{mes}})$  satisfy  $SBT_V$ ?*

One can see the interaction between the topological entropy and the frame entropy as a Strong Bridge Theorem. Indeed, to every topological space  $X$  corresponds the frame  $(\mathcal{O}(X), \cup, \cap)$  of open sets of  $X$ , with top element  $X$  and bottom element  $\emptyset$ . Every continuous selfmap  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  gives rise to a frame endomorphism  $\mathcal{O}(\phi) : \mathcal{O}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(X)$  defined by  $\mathcal{O}(\phi)(U) = \phi^{-1}(U)$  for  $U \in \mathcal{O}(X)$ . This gives a contravariant functor

$$\mathcal{O} : \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{Frm}.$$

Moreover, every (finite) open cover  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $X$  gives rise to a (finite) cover of  $\mathcal{O}(X)$  and  $\mathcal{O}(\phi) : \mathcal{O}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(X)$  takes (finite) covers of  $\mathcal{O}(X)$  to (finite) covers of  $\mathcal{O}(X)$ . Together with Theorem 5.10 and (5.8), this proves the following

**Theorem 6.19.** *Consider the functor  $\mathcal{O} : \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{Frm}$ . The pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{fin-cov}}, \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{fin-cov}_{fr}})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\mathcal{O}}$ . In particular,  $(h_{\mathbf{fin-top}}, h_{fr})$  satisfies  $BT_{\mathcal{O}}$ .*

Consider the  $T_0$ -reflection

$$r : \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{Top}_0,$$

where  $\mathbf{Top}_0$  is the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Top}$  of  $T_0$  spaces. If  $rX$  is the  $T_0$ -reflection of a topological space  $X$ , then for every continuous selfmap  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  the reflection  $\bar{\phi} : rX \rightarrow rX$  in  $\mathbf{Top}_0$  has the same topological entropy as  $\phi$ . We want to present this result from [47] as a Strong Bridge Theorem as follows.

**Theorem 6.20.** *Consider  $r : \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{Top}_0$ . The pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{fin-cov}}, \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{fin-cov}})$  satisfies  $SBT_r$ . In particular,  $(h_{\mathbf{fin-top}}, h_{\mathbf{fin-top}})$  satisfies  $BT_r$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathbf{Top}$ . The reflection  $r$  assigns to  $X$  a surjective continuous map  $rX : X \rightarrow rX$ . Then  $\mathbf{fin-cov}(rX) : \mathbf{fin-cov}(rX) \rightarrow \mathbf{fin-cov}(X)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$  such that  $\mathbf{fin-cov}(r\phi)$  and  $\mathbf{fin-cov}(\phi)$  are conjugate by  $\mathbf{fin-cov}(rX)^{-1}$ . So it suffices to take  $\eta_X = \mathbf{fin-cov}(rX)^{-1}$ . For the second part,  $h_{\mathbf{fin-top}} = \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{fin-cov}}$  by Theorem 5.10. □

This theorem reduces the study of  $h_{\text{fin-top}}$  to the category of  $T_0$ -spaces. In contrast with Theorem 6.20, one can show that the reflection  $\mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{Top}_1$ , where  $\mathbf{Top}_1$  denotes the (full) subcategory of  $\mathbf{Top}$  of  $T_1$  topological spaces, strongly fails to preserve the topological entropy. For an example consider the topological space  $X$  obtained from  $\mathbb{Z}$ , equipped with the discrete topology and an extra point  $a$ , so that  $X = \mathbb{Z} \cup \{a\}$  has  $a$  as an isolated dense point, i.e.,  $\{\{a, n\} : n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$  is a base of the topology of  $X$ . Clearly,  $X$  is a compact  $T_0$ -space whose  $T_1$ -reflection is a singleton, as  $\{a\}$  is dense in  $X$ . Let  $\phi : X \rightarrow X$  be defined by  $\phi(a) = a$  and  $\phi(n) = n + 1$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then  $\phi$  is a homeomorphism having  $\mathbb{Z}$  as a closed invariant subspace. Since  $h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi|_{\mathbb{Z}}) = \infty$  (see [52, 76]), we have that  $h_{\text{fin-top}}(\phi) = \infty$ .

For convenience we give the following obvious corollary of the theorem about the restriction

$$r' : \mathbf{CTG} \rightarrow \mathbf{CG} \quad (6.2)$$

of the  $T_0$ -reflection  $r : \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{Top}_0$  to the subcategory  $\mathbf{CTG}$  of compact topological groups (recall that  $T_0$ -topological groups are Hausdorff):

**Corollary 6.21.** *For the functor (6.2) the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{fin-cov}}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{fin-cov}})$  satisfies  $SBT_{r'}$ . In particular,  $(h_{\text{fin-top}}, h_{\text{fin-top}})$  satisfies  $BT_{r'}$ . Hence,  $(h_{\text{top}}, h_{\text{top}})$  satisfies  $BT_{r'}$ .*

The last assertion of the above corollary follows from Remark 5.11 (see also Example 6.14(a)). It shows that it makes sense to consider the topological entropy for compact groups that are Hausdorff (indeed, in this paper compact groups are usually intended to be Hausdorff).

Denote by  $\mathbf{TAG}$  the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{AG}$  whose objects are all torsion abelian groups. The coreflection

$$t : \mathbf{AG} \rightarrow \mathbf{TAG} \quad (6.3)$$

that assigns to every abelian group  $G$  its torsion subgroup  $t(G)$  preserves the algebraic entropy  $\text{ent}$  in the sense of the first equality in (5.9), since  $\mathbf{sub}(G) = \mathbf{sub}(t(G))$ .

**Theorem 6.22.** *The pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}})$  satisfies  $SBT_t$ , where  $t$  is as in (6.3). In particular,  $(\text{ent}, \text{ent})$  satisfies  $BT_t$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  in  $\mathbf{AG}$ . The coreflection  $t$  assigns to  $G$  the embedding  $t_G : t(G) \rightarrow G$ . Then  $\mathbf{sub}(t_G) : \mathbf{sub}(t(G)) \rightarrow \mathbf{sub}(G)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$  such that  $\mathbf{sub}(t\phi)$  and  $\mathbf{sub}(\phi)$  are conjugate by  $\mathbf{sub}(t_G)^{-1}$ . So it suffices to take  $\eta_G = \mathbf{sub}(t_G)^{-1}$ . For the second part,  $\text{ent} = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}}$  by Theorem 5.20.  $\square$

Let  $\mathbf{RFAG}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{AG}$  with objects all residually finite groups. For an abelian group  $G$  the first Ulm subgroup is

$$G^1 = \bigcap_{m>0} mG.$$

The assignment  $G \mapsto G/G^1$  gives a reflection

$$r : \mathbf{AG} \rightarrow \mathbf{RFAG}.$$

Since for every abelian group  $G$  the canonical homomorphism  $q : G \rightarrow G/G^1$  induces an isomorphism  $\mathbf{sub}^*(q) : \mathbf{sub}^*(G/G^1) \rightarrow \mathbf{sub}^*(G)$ , we have the following theorem (its proof is analogous to that of Theorem 6.20).

**Theorem 6.23.** *Consider  $r : \mathbf{AG} \rightarrow \mathbf{RFAG}$ . The pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}^*}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}^*})$  satisfies  $SBT_r$ . In particular,  $(\text{ent}^*, \text{ent}^*)$  satisfies  $BT_r$ .*

## 6.4 Bridge Theorems for the algebraic entropy and the topological entropy

For a locally compact abelian group  $G$  the Pontryagin dual  $\widehat{G}$  is the group of all continuous character  $\chi : G \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$ , endowed with the compact-open topology; moreover, for a continuous endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$ , its dual endomorphism  $\widehat{\phi} : \widehat{G} \rightarrow \widehat{G}$  is continuous (see [94, 75]). This gives the Pontryagin duality functor

$$\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{LCA} \rightarrow \mathbf{LCA},$$

where  $\mathbf{LCA}$  is the category of all locally compact abelian groups and all continuous homomorphisms. The Pontryagin duality functor is invertible and coincides with its inverse (up to natural equivalence), by Pontryagin-van Kampen duality theorem.

For a subset  $A$  of  $G$ , the annihilator of  $A$  in  $\widehat{G}$  is

$$A^\perp = \{\chi \in \widehat{G} : \chi(A) = 0\},$$

while for a subset  $B$  of  $\widehat{G}$ , the annihilator of  $B$  in  $G$  is

$$B^\top = \{x \in G : \chi(x) = 0 \text{ for every } \chi \in B\}.$$

Clearly,  $^\perp$  reverses the inclusions.

The following Bridge Theorem was proved in [41]. We consider the restrictions of the Pontryagin duality functor

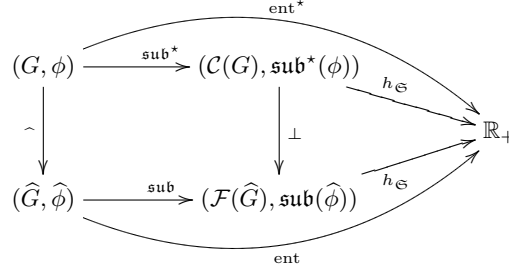
$$\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{AG} \rightarrow \mathbf{CAG} \quad \text{and} \quad \widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{CAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{AG},$$

which are one inverse to each other.

**Theorem 6.24.** (a) *Consider  $\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{AG} \rightarrow \mathbf{CAG}$ . The pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}^*}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\widehat{\cdot}}$ . In particular, the pair  $(\text{ent}^*, \text{ent})$  satisfies  $BT_{\widehat{\cdot}}$ .*

(b) *Consider  $\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{CAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{AG}$ . The pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}^*})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\widehat{\cdot}}$ . In particular, the pair  $(\text{ent}, \text{ent}^*)$  satisfies  $BT_{\widehat{\cdot}}$ .*

*Proof.* (a) Let  $G$  be an abelian group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  an endomorphism. The semilattice isomorphism  $\mathcal{C}(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}(\widehat{G})$  given by  $N \mapsto N^\perp$  preserves the norms, so it is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ , and it suffices to take  $\eta = \perp$ .



For the second statement, note that  $\text{ent}^* = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}^*}$  and  $\text{ent} = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}}$  by Theorems 5.28 and 5.20.

(b) Follows from (a) and Remark 6.11(b).  $\square$

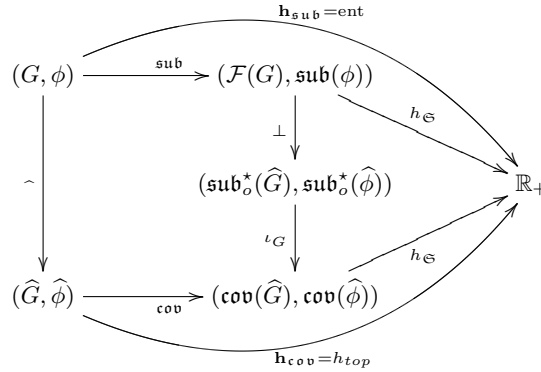
The following result, covering (and inspired by) Weiss' Bridge Theorem from [113], is our leading example. The proof follows the idea of the original one. The restrictions of the Pontryagin duality functor

$$\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{TAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{TdCAG} \quad \text{and} \quad \widetilde{\cdot} : \mathbf{TdCAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{TAG}$$

are inverse to each other.

**Theorem 6.25.** *Consider  $\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{TAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{TdCAG}$ . The pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{cov}})$  satisfies  $\text{SBT}^w$ . In particular, the pair  $(\text{ent}, h_{\text{top}})$  satisfies  $\text{BT}^-$ , and for  $\widetilde{\cdot} : \mathbf{TdCAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{TAG}$ , the pair  $(\text{ent}, h_{\text{top}})$  satisfies  $\text{BT}^-$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  be an endomorphism of a torsion abelian group  $G$ . Then  $\widehat{G}$  is a totally disconnected compact abelian group and  $\widehat{\phi} : \widehat{G} \rightarrow \widehat{G}$  a continuous endomorphism. The semilattice isomorphism  $\mathcal{F}(G) \rightarrow \text{sub}_o^*(\widehat{G})$  given by  $N \mapsto N^\perp$  preserves the norms, so it is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ . By Claim 5.29, there exists a weak isomorphism  $\iota_G : \text{sub}_o^*(\widehat{G}) \rightarrow \text{cov}(\widehat{G})$  with coefficient 1. Therefore,  $\eta_G = \iota_G \circ \perp : \mathcal{F}(G) \rightarrow \text{cov}(\widehat{G})$  is a weak isomorphism with coefficient 1.



The second statement follows from the fact that  $\text{ent} = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}}$  and  $h_{\text{top}} = \mathbf{h}_{\text{cov}}$  by Theorems 5.20 and 5.8, and from Remark 6.11(b).  $\square$

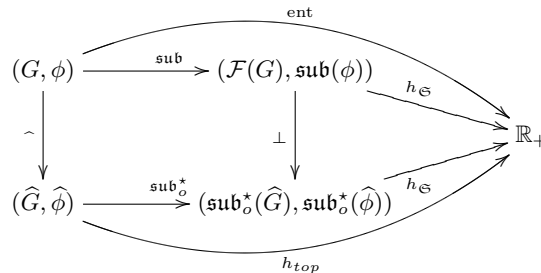
**Question 6.26.** *Does the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{cov}}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}})$  satisfy  $\text{SBT}^-$ ?*

The conclusion of Theorem 6.25 that the pair  $(\text{ent}, h_{\text{top}})$  satisfies  $\text{BT}^-$  can be obtained in an easier way by choosing a different pair of functors. This option, exploited in Theorem 6.27, has also the advantage of producing a Strong<sup>w</sup> Bridge Theorem (consequently, also a Bridge Theorem) in both directions  $\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{TAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{TdCAG}$  and  $\widetilde{\cdot} : \mathbf{TdCAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{TAG}$ , whereas Theorem 6.25 provides a Strong<sup>w</sup> Bridge Theorem only for the first functor.

**Theorem 6.27.** (a) *Consider  $\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{TAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{TdCAG}$ . The pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_o^*})$  satisfies  $\text{SBT}^-$ . In particular, the pair  $(\text{ent}, h_{\text{top}})$  satisfies  $\text{BT}^-$ .*

(b) *Consider  $\widetilde{\cdot} : \mathbf{TdCAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{TAG}$ . The pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_o^*}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}})$  satisfies  $\text{SBT}^-$ . In particular, the pair  $(h_{\text{top}}, \text{ent})$  satisfies  $\text{BT}^-$  with  $C = 1$ .*

*Proof.* (a) Let  $G$  be a torsion abelian group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  an endomorphism. The semilattice isomorphism  $\mathcal{F}(G) \rightarrow \text{sub}_o^*(\widehat{G})$  given by  $N \mapsto N^\perp$  preserves the norms, so it is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$ . Hence it suffices to take  $\eta = \perp$ .



For the second statement, note that  $\text{ent} = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}}$  and  $h_{\text{top}} = \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_o^*}$  by Theorems 5.20 and 5.31.

(b) Follows from (a) in view of Remark 6.11.  $\square$

The general Bridge Theorem recalled in Theorem 1.3 can be stated as follows.

**Theorem 6.28.** For the functor  $\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{AG} \rightarrow \mathbf{CAG}$  and its inverse  $\widetilde{\cdot} : \mathbf{CAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{AG}$ , the pairs  $(h_{alg}, h_{top})$  and  $(h_{top}, h_{alg})$  satisfy  $BT^-$ .

On the other hand, it is not known whether the respective functorial entropies satisfy the Strong Bridge Theorem.

**Question 6.29.** Do the pairs  $(\mathbf{h}_{pet}, \mathbf{h}_{cov})$  and  $(\mathbf{h}_{cov}, \mathbf{h}_{pet})$  satisfy  $SBT^-$  or  $SBT^w$ ?

The following Bridge Theorem was proved in [21] in the more general case of locally linearly compact vector spaces over a discrete field  $\mathbb{K}$ . We consider the restrictions of the Lefschetz duality functor from the category of locally linearly compact vector spaces to the cases

$$\widetilde{\cdot} : \mathbf{LCVect}_{\mathbb{K}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Mod}_{\mathbb{K}} \quad \text{and} \quad \sim : \mathbf{Mod}_{\mathbb{K}} \rightarrow \mathbf{LCVect}_{\mathbb{K}}, \quad (6.4)$$

which are inverse to each other.

**Theorem 6.30.** For the functors (6.4):

- (a) the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{sub_d^*}, \mathbf{h}_{sub_d})$  satisfies  $SBT^-$ , so in particular,  $(ent_{dim}^*, ent_{dim})$  satisfies  $BT^-$ ;
- (b) the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{sub_d}, \mathbf{h}_{sub_d^*})$  satisfies  $SBT^-$ , so in particular,  $(ent_{dim}, ent_{dim}^*)$  satisfies  $BT^-$ .

*Proof.* (a) Let  $V$  be a linearly compact vector space over  $\mathbb{K}$  and let  $\phi : V \rightarrow V$  be a continuous endomorphism. The semilattice isomorphism  $\mathcal{F}_o(V) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_d(\widetilde{V})$  given by

$$N \mapsto N^\perp = \{\chi \in \mathbf{CHom}(V, \mathbb{K}) : \chi(N) = 0\}$$

preserves the norms, by Lefschetz duality theory, so it is an isomorphism in  $\mathfrak{S}$  (see [21] for the details). Then it suffices to take  $\eta = \perp$ .

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & & & ent_{dim}^* \\
 & & & & \curvearrowright \\
 (V, \phi) & \xrightarrow{sub_{dim}^*} & (\mathcal{F}_o(V), sub_o^*(\phi)) & \xrightarrow{h_\varepsilon} & \mathbb{R}_+ \\
 \downarrow \sim & & \downarrow \perp & & \uparrow \\
 (\widetilde{V}, \widetilde{\phi}) & \xrightarrow{sub_{dim}} & (\mathcal{F}_d(\widetilde{V}), sub_d(\widetilde{\phi})) & \xrightarrow{h_\varepsilon} & \mathbb{R}_+ \\
 & & & & \curvearrowleft \\
 & & & & ent_{dim}
 \end{array}$$

For the second statement, note that  $ent_{dim}^* = \mathbf{h}_{sub_d^*}$  and  $ent_{dim} = \mathbf{h}_{sub_d}$  by (5.19) and (5.18).

(b) Follows from (a) and Remark 6.11(b). □

## 6.5 Bridge Theorems for the set-theoretic entropy

The Bridge Theorems that we analyze until the end of this section connect the topological entropy  $h_{top}$  and the algebraic entropy  $h_{alg}$  with the covariant set-theoretic entropy  $\mathfrak{h}$  by means of the backward and the forward generalized shifts, respectively.

### 6.5.1 Topological entropy and backward generalized shifts

We start proving the following (Strong) Bridge Theorem between the set-theoretic and the topological entropy, then we give its counterpart for  $\mathbf{CTop}$ .

**Theorem 6.31.** Let  $\varepsilon : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{CG}$  be a contravariant functor sending coproducts to products, and let  $K = \varepsilon(*)$ . Then:

- (a) the pair  $(\mathfrak{h}, h_{top})$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon, \infty}$ , if  $K$  is infinite;
- (b) the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{im}, \mathbf{h}_{sub_d^*})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon, \log|K|}^w$ , if  $K$  is finite.

In particular, the pair  $(\mathfrak{h}, h_{top})$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon, \log|K|}$  (with the convention that  $\log|K| = \infty$  if  $K$  is infinite).

In Lemma 6.32 we provide a proof of the theorem in the particular case of the functor (4.7) of the backward generalized shift, then Theorem 6.31 follows immediately from Lemma 6.32, Theorem 4.15, Lemma 6.15(a), and Remark 6.7.

**Lemma 6.32.** Theorem 6.31 holds with  $\varepsilon = \mathcal{B}_K$ , for a compact group  $K$ .

*Proof.* Let  $X$  be a non-empty set. For  $F \in \mathcal{S}(X)$  let  $\eta_X(F)$  be the subgroup  $K^{X \setminus F} \times \{1\}^F$  of  $K^X$ . It is  $\sigma_\lambda$ -invariant, whenever  $F$  is  $\lambda$ -invariant in  $X$ .

(a) Assume that  $K$  is infinite, and let  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  be a map. We have to check that:

- (i) if  $\mathfrak{h}(\lambda) > 0$ , then  $h_{top}(\sigma_\lambda) = \infty$ ;
- (ii) if  $\mathfrak{h}(\lambda) = 0$ , then  $h_{top}(\sigma_\lambda) = 0$  as well.

To check (i) assume that  $\mathfrak{h}(\lambda) > 0$ . Then there exists a  $\lambda$ -invariant infinite subset  $N = \{x_0, \dots, x_n, \dots\}$  of  $X$ , where  $\lambda$  acts as a right shift, i.e.,  $\lambda(x_n) = x_{n+1}$  for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then the functor  $\mathcal{B}_K$  transforms the inclusion  $j : N \rightarrow X$  into the projection  $K^X \rightarrow K^N$  and the restriction  $\lambda \upharpoonright_N : N \rightarrow N$  to  $\sigma_{\lambda \upharpoonright_N} : K^N \rightarrow K^N$ , which is conjugate to the left Bernoulli shift  $K^\beta : K^\mathbb{N} \rightarrow K^\mathbb{N}$ . Since  $K$  is infinite, by the Monotonicity for factors, the Invariance under conjugation and (5.5), we conclude that  $h_{top}(\sigma_\lambda) \geq h_{top}(K^\beta) = \infty$ .

To verify (ii) assume that  $\mathfrak{h}(\lambda) = 0$ , i.e., every  $F \in \mathcal{S}(X)$  is contained in a  $\lambda$ -invariant finite set  $F' \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ . This implies that every subgroup of the form  $\eta_X(F)$  of  $K^X$  contains a subgroup (of the same form)  $\eta_X(F')$ , with  $F' \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ , that is  $\sigma_\lambda$ -invariant.

The group  $K^X$  is the inverse limit of the inverse system of groups

$$\mathcal{K} = \{(K^F, \pi_{F'}^F) : F, F' \in \mathcal{S}(X)\}.$$

where  $\pi_{F'}^F : K^F \rightarrow K^{F'}$ , for  $F \supseteq F'$  in  $\mathcal{S}(X)$ , is the standard projection. By what we observed above,  $K^X$  is also the inverse limit of the inverse system

$$\mathcal{K}_{inv} = \{(K^F, \pi_{F'}^F) : F, F' \in \mathcal{S}(X), \lambda\text{-invariant}\}.$$

Obviously,  $K^X/\eta_X(F)$  is topologically isomorphic to  $K^F$  for every  $F \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ . Moreover, when  $F \in \mathcal{S}(X)$  is  $\lambda$ -invariant, this isomorphism extends to an isomorphism of the flows  $(K^X/\eta_X(F), \sigma_\lambda^F)$  and  $(K^F, \sigma_{\lambda \upharpoonright_F})$ , where

$$\sigma_\lambda^F : K^X/\eta_X(F) \rightarrow K^X/\eta_X(F)$$

is the endomorphism induced by  $\sigma_\lambda$ ; equivalently,  $\sigma_\lambda^F$  and  $\sigma_{\lambda \upharpoonright_F}$  are conjugate and so  $h_{top}(\sigma_\lambda^F) = h_{top}(\sigma_{\lambda \upharpoonright_F})$ .

Let  $\zeta = \lambda \upharpoonright_F : F \rightarrow F$  for the sake of brevity. Since  $F$  is finite, we deduce there exist natural numbers  $m > k$  such that  $\zeta^m = \zeta^k$ . By (4.8), this yields

$$(\sigma_\zeta)^m = \sigma_{\zeta^m} = \sigma_{\zeta^k} = (\sigma_\zeta)^k.$$

Therefore,  $\sigma_\zeta$  is quasi-periodic. By Lemma 4.5, we conclude that  $h_{top}(\sigma_\zeta) = 0$ . Therefore,  $h_{top}(\sigma_\lambda^F) = 0$ .

This proves that  $h_{top}(\sigma_\lambda) = 0$  in view of the Continuity for inverse limits of  $h_{top}$ .

(b) Assume that  $K$  is finite. Then  $\eta_X(F) \in \mathcal{V}_{K^X}(1)$  for every  $F \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ .

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \mathfrak{h} & & \\ & & \curvearrowright & & \\ (X, \lambda) & \xrightarrow{\text{im}} & (\mathcal{S}(X), \text{im}(\lambda)) & \xrightarrow{h_\mathfrak{E}} & \mathbb{R}_+ \\ \downarrow \mathcal{B}_K & & \downarrow \eta_X & & \uparrow \\ (K^X, \sigma_\lambda) & \xrightarrow{\text{sub}_\sigma^*} & (\mathcal{V}_{K^X}(1), \text{sub}_\sigma^*(\sigma_\lambda)) & \xrightarrow{h_\mathfrak{E}} & \mathbb{R}_+ \\ & & \curvearrowleft & & \\ & & h_{top} & & \end{array}$$

Since every  $U \in \mathcal{V}_{K^X}(1)$  contains  $\eta_X(F)$  for some  $F \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ , we deduce that  $\eta_X$  has cofinal image in  $\mathcal{V}_{K^X}(1)$ . Moreover, the norm of  $F$  in  $\mathcal{S}(X)$  is  $|F|$ , while the norm of  $\eta_X(F)$  is

$$\log[K^X : \eta_X(F)] = \log |K|^{|F|} = |F| \cdot \log |K|.$$

This proves that  $\eta_X : \mathcal{S}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{V}_{K^X}(1)$  is a weak isomorphism with coefficient  $\log |K|$ . Therefore, the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{im}}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{sub}_\sigma^*})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\mathcal{B}_K, \log |K|}^w$ .  $\square$

The following is the counterpart of Theorem 6.31 for the category  $\mathbf{CTop}_2$  of all compact Hausdorff spaces. It covers the known formula recalled in (5.7).

**Theorem 6.33.** *Let  $\varepsilon : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{CTop}_2$  be a contravariant functor sending coproducts to products, and let  $K = \varepsilon(*)$ . Then:*

- (a) *the pair  $(\mathfrak{h}, h_{top})$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon, \infty}$ , if  $K$  is infinite;*
- (b) *the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\text{im}}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{cov}})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\varepsilon, \log |K|}^w$ , if  $K$  is finite.*

*In particular, the pair  $(\mathfrak{h}, h_{top})$  satisfies  $BT_{\varepsilon, \log |K|}$  (with the convention that  $\log |K| = \infty$  if  $K$  is infinite).*

Theorem 6.33 can be proved following the line of the proof of Theorem 6.31. Indeed, Theorem 6.33 follows from Theorem 4.15, Lemma 6.15(a), Remark 6.7, and the counterpart for  $\mathbf{CTop}_2$  of Lemma 6.32. This can be obtained as follows. Item (a) follows from a standard variation of the proof of item (a) of Lemma 6.32. For item (b) consider for every finite  $F$  the projection  $p_F : K^X \rightarrow K^F$ . As  $K^F$  is finite, so discrete, the set  $p_F^{-1}(x)$  is open in  $K^X$  for every  $x \in K^F$ , hence such that

$$\mathcal{U}_F = \{p_F^{-1}(x) : x \in K^F\}$$

is a finite open cover of  $K^X$  with

$$N(\mathcal{U}_F) = |K|^F.$$

Moreover, following the line of the proof of Claim 5.29, one can prove that the family

$$\{\mathcal{U}_F : F \in \mathcal{S}(X)\}$$

is cofinal in  $\text{fin-cov}(X)$ , and  $\text{fin-cov}(X)$  is cofinal in  $\text{cov}(X)$  by Remark 5.11. Hence, letting

$$\nu_X(F) = \mathcal{U}_F$$

for every  $F \in \mathcal{S}(X)$ , one finds that  $\nu$  is a natural transformation between  $\mathbf{im}$  and  $\mathbf{cov} \circ \mathcal{B}_K$  such that, for every set  $X$ ,  $\nu_X : \mathcal{S}(X) \rightarrow \mathbf{cov}(X)$  is a weak isomorphism with coefficient  $\log |K|$ . Therefore, the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{im}}, \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{cov}})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\mathcal{B}_K, \log |K|}^w$ .

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \mathfrak{h} & & \\
 & \curvearrowright & & \curvearrowleft & \\
 (X, \lambda) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{im}} & (S(X), \mathbf{im}(\lambda)) & \xrightarrow{h_{\mathfrak{E}}} & \mathbb{R}_+ \\
 \mathcal{B}_K \downarrow & & \downarrow \nu_X & & \\
 (K^X, \sigma_\lambda) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{cov}} & (\mathbf{cov}(K^X), \mathbf{cov}(\sigma_\lambda)) & \xrightarrow{h_{\mathfrak{E}}} & \mathbb{R}_+ \\
 & \curvearrowleft & & \curvearrowright & \\
 & & h_{top} & & 
 \end{array}$$

**Remark 6.34.** Let  $K$  be a group and

$$\mathcal{B}'_K : \mathbf{Set}_{\mathbf{fin}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grp}$$

be the contravariant functor defined on  $\mathbf{Set}_{\mathbf{fin}}$ , sending  $\emptyset$  to the terminal object  $\{1\}$  of  $\mathbf{Grp}$  and a non-empty set  $X$  to

$$\mathcal{B}'_K(X) = K^{(X)}.$$

For a finite-to-one map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  let, as recalled in (5.13),

$$\mathcal{B}'_K(\lambda) = \sigma_\lambda^\oplus : K^{(Y)} \rightarrow K^{(X)}$$

when  $X$  and  $Y$  are non-empty, and let  $\mathcal{B}'_K(\lambda) = 1$  when either  $X$  or  $Y$  is empty.

The result from [35] recalled in (5.14) can be stated as follows as a Bridge Theorem, with the convention that  $\log |K| = \infty$  if  $K$  is infinite:

the pair  $(\mathfrak{h}_p^*, h_{alg})$  satisfies  $BT_{\mathcal{B}'_K, \log |K|}$ .

Nevertheless, we cannot find it as a Strong Bridge Theorem, since we can find  $\mathfrak{h}^*$  as a functorial entropy but not  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*$ .

To overcome this problem one could proceed as follows. First, note that every functor

$$F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{Y}$$

induces a functor

$$F_2 : \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{X}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{Y}}$$

assigning to each object  $f : X \rightarrow X$  of  $\mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{X}}$  the object  $F(f)$  of  $\mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{Y}}$ . A careful analysis of our categorical approach to entropy shows that we need substantially, rather than the functor

$$F : \mathfrak{X} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}^*,$$

the functor

$$F_2 : \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{X}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{S}^*},$$

so that a “functorial entropy” of  $\mathfrak{X}$  can be obtained as a composition of  $F_2$  with the entropy function

$$h_{\mathfrak{S}^*} : \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{S}^*} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+ \cup \{\infty\}.$$

This modified approach applies in cases when one has a convenient functor  $G : \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{X}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{S}^*}$  that is not necessarily of the form  $G = F_2$ . For example, it perfectly fits the case of the functor

$$\mathbf{sc} : \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathbf{Set}_{\mathbf{fin}}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathbf{Set}_{\mathbf{fin}}},$$

sending the flow  $(X, \lambda)$  to its subflow  $(\mathbf{sc}(\lambda), \lambda \upharpoonright_{\mathbf{sc}(\lambda)})$  (it cannot be obtained as  $F_2$  for any functor  $F : \mathbf{Set}_{\mathbf{fin}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}_{\mathbf{fin}}$ ). Then, for the functor

$$\mathbf{cim}_2 : \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathbf{Set}_{\mathbf{fin}}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{S}^*}$$

induced by the functor  $\mathbf{cim}$ , let

$$G = \mathbf{cim}_2 \circ \mathbf{sc} : \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathbf{Set}_{\mathbf{fin}}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathfrak{S}^*}.$$

This allows us to obtain, for every  $(X, \lambda) \in \mathbf{Flow}_{\mathbf{Set}_{\mathbf{fin}}}$ ,

$$\mathfrak{h}_p^*(X, \lambda) = h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(G(X, \lambda)),$$

and so we can find  $\mathfrak{h}_p^*$  as a “functorial entropy” as well, although in a slightly different way compared to the functorial entropy we studied so far. This alternative approach will not be adopted in the present paper.

### 6.5.2 Algebraic entropy and forward generalized shifts

We start proving the relation between the backward generalized shift  $\sigma_\lambda : K^Y \rightarrow K^X$  induced by the map  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  (see Definition 4.12 and (5.6)), and the forward generalized shift  $\tau_\lambda : \widehat{K}^{(X)} \rightarrow \widehat{K}^{(Y)}$  (see Definition 4.16 and (5.15)). To this end we identify

$$\widehat{K^X} = \widehat{K}^{(X)} \quad (6.5)$$

as follows. For  $\chi \in \widehat{K^X}$  there exists a finite subset  $F$  of  $X$  such that

$$\chi = \sum_{x \in F} \chi \upharpoonright_{K_x},$$

where we denote by  $K_x$  the copy of  $K$  in  $K^X$  corresponding to  $x \in X$ . Then we identify  $\chi \in \widehat{K^X}$  with  $(\chi \upharpoonright_{K_x})_{x \in X} \in \widehat{K}^{(X)}$ , noting that  $\chi \upharpoonright_{K_x} = 0$  for every  $x \in X \setminus F$ . When  $K$  is finite,  $K \cong \widehat{K}$ .

**Proposition 6.35.** *Let  $K$  be a compact abelian group and  $\lambda : X \rightarrow Y$  be a map. Then the homomorphisms*

$$\sigma_\lambda : K^Y \rightarrow K^X \quad \text{and} \quad \tau_\lambda : \widehat{K}^{(X)} \rightarrow \widehat{K}^{(Y)}$$

satisfy

$$\widehat{\sigma}_\lambda = \tau_\lambda.$$

*Proof.* For a character  $\xi \in \widehat{K}$  and  $x \in X$ , let  $\xi^x \in \widehat{K}^{(X)}$  be defined by  $\xi^x(y) = 0$  if  $y \in X \setminus \{x\}$  and  $\xi^x(x) = \xi$ . In view of the identification (6.5), for  $x_0 \in X$  and  $f \in K^X$  one has

$$\xi^{x_0}(f) = \xi(f(x_0)).$$

Since  $\{\xi^x : \xi \in \widehat{K}, x \in X\}$  is a set of generators of  $\widehat{K}^{(X)}$ , it suffices to prove that, for every  $\xi \in \widehat{K}$  and every  $x \in X$ ,

$$\widehat{\sigma}_\lambda(\xi^x) = \tau_\lambda(\xi^x). \quad (6.6)$$

So, let  $\xi \in \widehat{K}$  and  $x \in X$ . Then, by the definition,

$$\tau_\lambda(\xi^x) = \xi^{\lambda(x)}.$$

Moreover,  $\widehat{\sigma}_\lambda(\xi^x) = \xi^x \circ \sigma_\lambda$ , and hence, for every  $f \in K^Y$ ,

$$\widehat{\sigma}_\lambda(\xi^x)(f) = \xi^x(\sigma_\lambda(f)) = \xi^x(f \circ \lambda) = \xi((f \circ \lambda)(x)) = \xi(f(\lambda(x))) = \xi^{\lambda(x)}(f);$$

therefore,

$$\widehat{\sigma}_\lambda(\xi^x) = \xi^{\lambda(x)}.$$

This proves the equality in (6.6), and consequently the equality  $\widehat{\sigma}_\lambda = \tau_\lambda$ .  $\square$

Fix an abelian group  $K$  and consider the functor  $\mathcal{F}_K : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{AG}$  defined in (4.14) by means of the forward generalized shift. Proposition 6.35 implies directly the following nice connection between the functors  $\mathcal{B}_K$  and  $\mathcal{F}_K$ .

**Corollary 6.36.** *For a compact abelian group  $K$  and the functor  $\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{CAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{AG}$  one has*

$$\mathcal{F}_{\widehat{K}} = \widehat{\cdot} \circ \mathcal{B}_K.$$

The following is the counterpart of Theorem 6.31 for the algebraic entropy and the covariant set-theoretic entropy.

**Theorem 6.37.** *Let  $\gamma : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{AG}$  be a covariant functor sending coproducts to coproducts, and let  $K = \gamma(\ast)$ . Then:*

- (a) *the pair  $(\mathfrak{h}, h_{alg})$  satisfies  $BT_{\gamma, \infty}$ , if  $K$  is infinite;*
- (b) *the pair  $(\mathfrak{h}_{im}, \mathfrak{h}_{pet})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\gamma, \log|K|}^w$ , if  $K$  is finite.*

*In particular, the pair  $(\mathfrak{h}, h_{alg})$  satisfies  $BT_{\gamma, \log|K|}$  (with the convention that  $\log|K| = \infty$  if  $K$  is infinite).*

Theorem 6.37 follows directly from Lemma 6.38, Theorem 4.17, Lemma 6.15(a), and Remark 6.7. We deduce Lemma 6.38 from Lemma 6.32 using the nice properties of the Pontryagin duality functor.

**Lemma 6.38.** *Theorem 6.37 holds with  $\gamma = \mathcal{F}_K$ , for an abelian group  $K$ .*

*Proof.* If  $K$  is finite, then the pair  $(\mathfrak{h}, h_{top})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\mathcal{B}_K, \log|K|}^w$  by Lemma 6.32, while  $(h_{top}, h_{alg})$  satisfies  $SBT^w$  (where  $\widehat{\cdot} : \mathbf{CAG} \rightarrow \mathbf{AG}$  is the Pontryagin duality functor), by Theorem 6.25. Then the pair  $(\mathfrak{h}, h_{alg})$  satisfies  $SBT_{\mathcal{B}_K, \log|K|}^w$  by Corollary 6.36. Analogously, the case when  $K$  is infinite follows from Lemma 6.32, Theorem 6.28 and Corollary 6.36.  $\square$

## 7 Topological and algebraic entropy in locally compact groups

In this section, in order to find the topological entropy and the algebraic entropy for locally compact groups as functorial entropies, we need to use the larger category  $\mathfrak{S}^*$  instead of  $\mathfrak{S}$ . In fact, as noted in the Introduction, these entropies are not invariant under inversion: if  $G$  is a totally disconnected locally compact group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  is a topological automorphism, then  $h_{top}(\phi^{-1}) = h_{top}(\phi) - \log \Delta(\phi)$ , where  $\Delta(\phi)$  is the modulus of  $\phi$  (see [59]), and the same formula holds for the algebraic entropy  $h_{alg}$  when  $G$  is strongly compactly covered (see [61]).

Let  $G$  be a locally compact group, let  $\mathcal{N}(G)$  be the family of all compact neighborhoods of 1 and  $\mu$  be a right Haar measure on  $G$ . For a continuous endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$ ,  $U \in \mathcal{N}(G)$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , the  $n$ -th  $\phi$ -cotrajectory  $C_n(\phi, U) = U \cap \phi^{-1}(U) \cap \dots \cap \phi^{-n+1}(U)$  is still in  $\mathcal{N}(G)$ . It can be shown that the value

$$H_{top}(\phi, U) = \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} -\frac{\log \mu(C_n(\phi, U))}{n},$$

is independent of the choice of the Haar measure  $\mu$ . The *topological entropy* of  $\phi$  is

$$h_{top}(\phi) = \sup\{H_{top}(\phi, U) : U \in \mathcal{N}(G)\}.$$

We are using here the same notation  $H_{top}$  and  $h_{top}$  that we have already used in §5.2 for the topological entropy of continuous selfmaps of compact spaces. This is safe since there is no possibility of confusion, moreover the two topological entropies coincide for continuous endomorphisms of compact groups.

If  $G$  is discrete, then  $\mathcal{N}(G)$  is the family of all finite subsets of  $G$  containing 1, and  $\mu(A) = |A|$  for subsets  $A$  of  $G$ . So  $H_{top}(\phi, U) = 0$  for every  $U \in \mathcal{N}(G)$ , hence  $h_{top}(\phi) = 0$ .

To obtain the topological entropy  $h_{top}(\phi)$  of a continuous endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  of a locally compact group via the semigroup entropy, let  $\mathcal{V}(G)$  be the family of all closed neighborhoods of 1 in  $G$ . Then

$$\mathcal{N}(G) \subseteq \mathcal{V}(G).$$

For  $U \in \mathcal{V}(G)$ , let

$$v_T(U) = \begin{cases} -\log \mu(U) & \text{if } \mu(U) \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise;} \end{cases}$$

note that the second case includes also the possibility  $\mu(U) = \infty$ . Then  $(\mathcal{V}(G), \cap, v_T)$  is a normed semilattice. We order  $\mathcal{V}(G)$  by the containment, that is,  $(\mathcal{V}(G), \supseteq)$ . Then the norm  $v_T$  is monotone with respect to this order and  $\mathcal{N}(G)$  is cofinal in  $(\mathcal{V}(G), \supseteq)$ .

Moreover, we associate to a continuous endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  the semigroup endomorphism  $\phi_T : \mathcal{V}(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{V}(G)$  defined by  $\phi_T(U) = \phi^{-1}(U)$  for every  $U \in \mathcal{V}(G)$ . The assignments  $G \mapsto \mathcal{V}(G)$  and  $\phi \mapsto \phi_T$  define a contravariant functor

$$\boxed{\text{lctop} : \mathbf{LCG} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}^*}.$$

**Theorem 7.1.** *Let  $G$  be a locally compact group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  a continuous endomorphism. Then  $H_{top}(\phi, U) = \mathbf{H}_{\text{lctop}}(\phi, U)$  for every  $U \in \mathcal{N}(G)$ , and so*

$$h_{top}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\text{lctop}}(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Let  $U \in \mathcal{N}(G)$ . For every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$  we have that

$$T_n(\phi_T, U) = C_n(\phi, U);$$

applying the definitions we can conclude that  $-\log \mu(C_n(\phi, U)) = c_n(\phi_T, U)$ . So,

$$H_{top}(\phi, U) = h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\phi_T, U) = \mathbf{H}_{\text{lctop}}(\phi, U). \quad (7.1)$$

As  $\mathcal{N}(G)$  is cofinal in  $(\mathcal{V}(G), \supseteq)$ , now (7.1) implies that  $h_{top}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\text{lctop}}(\phi)$ .  $\square$

Let  $G$  be a locally compact group,  $\mu$  a right Haar measure on  $G$  and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  a continuous endomorphism. To define the algebraic entropy of  $\phi$  with respect to  $U \in \mathcal{N}(G)$  one uses the  $n$ -th  $\phi$ -trajectory  $T_n(\phi, U) = U \cdot \phi(U) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi^{n-1}(U)$  of  $U$ , that still belongs to  $\mathcal{N}(G)$ ; the term ‘‘algebraic’’ is motivated by the fact that the definition of  $T_n(\phi, U)$  (unlike  $C_n(\phi, U)$ ) makes use of the group operation.

It turns out that the value

$$H_{alg}(\phi, U) = \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \mu(T_n(\phi, U))}{n} \quad (7.2)$$

does not depend on the choice of  $\mu$ . It can be shown that  $H_{alg}(\phi, U) < \infty$ . The *algebraic entropy* of  $\phi$  is

$$h_{alg}(\phi) = \sup\{H_{alg}(\phi, U) : U \in \mathcal{N}(G)\}.$$

(What Peters defined actually was, in our notation,  $h_{alg}(\phi^{-1})$  for a topological automorphism  $\phi$ ; it is denoted by  $h_\infty(\phi)$  in [93].)

As we saw above (7.2) is a limit when  $G$  is discrete. Moreover, if  $G$  is compact, then  $h_{alg}(\phi) = H_{alg}(\phi, G) = 0$ .

Let  $\mathcal{K}(G)$  be the family of all compact subsets of  $G$  containing 1. Then

$$\mathcal{N}(G) = \mathcal{K}(G) \cap \mathcal{V}(G).$$



For  $U \in \mathcal{K}(G)$ , let

$$v_A(U) = \begin{cases} \log \mu(U) & \text{if } \mu(U) \geq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Then  $(\mathcal{K}(G), \cdot, v_A)$  is a normed semigroup containing  $\mathcal{N}(G)$  as a subsemigroup. We consider on  $\mathcal{K}(G)$  the order given by the containment, that is,  $(\mathcal{K}(G), \subseteq)$ . Then the norm  $v_A$  is monotone with respect this order and  $\mathcal{N}(G)$  is cofinal in  $(\mathcal{K}(G), \subseteq)$ .

Moreover, we associate to a continuous endomorphism  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  the semigroup endomorphism  $\phi_A : \mathcal{K}(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{K}(G)$  defined by  $\phi_A(U) = \phi(U)$  for every  $U \in \mathcal{K}(G)$ . The assignments  $G \mapsto \mathcal{K}(G)$  and  $\phi \mapsto \phi_A$  define a contravariant functor

$$\mathbf{lcalg} : \mathbf{LCG} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}^*.$$

**Theorem 7.2.** *Let  $G$  be a locally compact group and  $\phi : G \rightarrow G$  a continuous endomorphism. Then  $H_{alg}(\phi, U) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{lcalg}}(\phi, U)$  for every  $U \in \mathcal{N}(G)$ , and so*

$$h_{top}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{lcalg}}(\phi).$$

*Proof.* Let  $U \in \mathcal{N}(G)$ . For every  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$  we have that

$$T_n(\phi_A, U) = T_n(\phi, U),$$

so applying the definitions we can conclude that  $\log \mu(T_n(\phi, U)) = c_n(\phi_A, U)$ . Therefore,

$$H_{alg}(\phi, U) = h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\phi_A, U) = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{lcalg}}(\phi, U). \quad (7.3)$$

As  $\mathcal{N}(G)$  is cofinal in  $(\mathcal{K}(G), \subseteq)$ , now (7.3) implies that  $h_{alg}(\phi) = \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{lcalg}}(\phi)$ .  $\square$

Hereinafter we speak about the (Strong) Bridge Theorem, even if the functors considered in this section have  $\mathfrak{S}^*$ , and not  $\mathfrak{S}$ , as a target. The above definitions can be generalized in the obvious way, so we are not going to do that, although we shall use  $SBT^\sim$  in the obvious sense.

Considering the restriction

$$\hat{\cdot} : \mathbf{TdLCA} \rightarrow \mathbf{CcLCA} \quad (7.4)$$

of the Pontryagin duality functor, where the objects of  $\mathbf{TdLCA}$  are all totally disconnected locally compact abelian groups and the objects of  $\mathbf{CcLCA}$  are all compactly covered locally compact abelian groups, Theorem 1.4 reads as follows:

**Theorem 7.3.** *For the functor (7.4) the pair  $(h_{top}, h_{alg})$  satisfies  $BT^\sim$ . Similarly, the pair  $(h_{alg}, h_{top})$  satisfies  $BT^\sim$  for the inverse functor  $\hat{\cdot} : \mathbf{CcLCA} \rightarrow \mathbf{TdLCA}$ .*

We leave open the following problem.

**Question 7.4.** *Does the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{lctop}}, \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{lcalg}})$  satisfy  $SBT^\sim$  for the functor (7.4)? Does the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{lctop}}, \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{lcalg}})$  satisfy  $SBT^\sim$ ?*

The validity of the Bridge Theorem for locally compact abelian group is open in general:

**Question 7.5.** *Consider  $\hat{\cdot} : \mathbf{LCA} \rightarrow \mathbf{LCA}$ . Does the pair  $(h_{top}, h_{alg})$  satisfy  $BT^\sim$ ?*

We leave open also the following more general question.

**Question 7.6.** *Consider  $\hat{\cdot} : \mathbf{LCA} \rightarrow \mathbf{LCA}$ . Does the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{lctop}}, \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{lcalg}})$  satisfy  $SBT^\sim$ ? Does the pair  $(\mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{lctop}}, \mathbf{h}_{\mathbf{lcalg}})$  satisfy  $SBT^\sim$ ?*

Indeed, we hope that considering  $h_{alg}$  and  $h_{top}$  as functorial entropies may help in proving the most general version of the Bridge Theorem between these two entropies.

## References

- [1] R. L. ADLER, A. G. KONHEIM, M. H. MCANDREW: *Topological entropy*, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 114 (1965) 309–319.
- [2] M. AKHAVIN, F. AYATOLLAH ZADEH SHIRAZI, D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO, A. HOSSEINI: *Algebraic entropy of shift endomorphisms on abelian groups*, Quest. Math. 32 (2009) 529–550.
- [3] D. ALCARAZ, D. DIKRANJAN, M. SANCHIS: *Bowen’s entropy for endomorphisms of totally bounded abelian groups*, Descriptive topology and functional analysis, Springer Proc. Math. Stat. 80, Springer, Cham (2014) 143–162.
- [4] F. AYATOLLAH ZADEH SHIRAZI, D. DIKRANJAN: *Set-theoretical entropy: A tool to compute topological entropy*, Proceedings ICTA2011 4–10 July 2011 Islamabad (Pakistan), Cambridge Scientific Publishers (2012) 11–32.
- [5] H. BASS: *The degree of polynomial growth of finitely generated nilpotent groups*, Proc. London Math. Soc. 25 (1972) 603–614.
- [6] M. P. BELLON, C. M. VIALLET: *Algebraic entropy*, Comm. Math. Phys. 204 (1999) 425–437.
- [7] F. BERLAI, D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Scale function vs Topological entropy*, Topology Appl. 160 (2013) 2314–2334.
- [8] A. BIŚ: *Entropies of a semigroup of maps*, Discrete Contin. Dyn. Syst. 11 (2004) 639–648.
- [9] A. BIŚ, D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO, L. STOYANOV: *Topological entropy, upper Carathéodory capacity and fractal dimensions of semigroup actions*, submitted.
- [10] A. BIŚ, D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO, L. STOYANOV: *Receptive metric entropy for group and semigroup actions*, work in progress.
- [11] F. BLANCHARD, Y. LACROIX: *Zero entropy factors of topological flows*, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. 119 (1993) 985–992.
- [12] N. N. BOGOLYUBOV, N. M. KRYLOV: *La théorie générale de la mesure dans son application à l’étude de systèmes dynamiques de la mécanique non-linéaire*, Annals of Mathematics 38 (1937) 65–113.
- [13] R. BOWEN: *Entropy for group endomorphisms and homogeneous spaces*, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 153 (1971) 401–414.
- [14] R. BOWEN: *Erratum to “Entropy for group endomorphisms and homogeneous spaces”*, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 181 (1973) 509–510.
- [15] R. BOWEN: *Entropy and the fundamental group*, The structure of attractors in dynamical systems (Proc. Conf., North Dakota State Univ., Fargo, N.D., 1977), Lecture Notes in Math. 668, Springer, Berlin (1978) 21–29.
- [16] L. BOWEN: *Measure conjugacy invariants for actions of countable sofic groups*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. 23 (2010) 217–245.
- [17] L. BOWEN: *Sofic entropy and amenable groups*, Ergodic Theory Dynam. Systems 32 (2012) 427–466.
- [18] G. C. L. BRÜMMER, D. DIKRANJAN, H.-P. KÜNZI: *Topological entropy and its extension to quasi uniform spaces*, preprint.
- [19] L. BUSETTI: *Entropia per semigrupperi normati*, Master Thesis, University of Udine, 2011.
- [20] I. CASTELLANO, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Algebraic entropy on locally linearly compact vector spaces*, Rings, Polynomials, and Modules, Springer, Cham (2017) 103–127.
- [21] I. CASTELLANO, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Topological entropy on locally linearly compact vector spaces*, Topology Appl. 252 (2019) 112–144.
- [22] T. CECCHERINI-SILBERSTEIN, M. COORNAERT, F. KRIEGER: *An analogue of Fekete’s lemma for subadditive functions on cancellative amenable semigroups*, J. Anal. Math. 124 (2014) 59–81.
- [23] N. CHUNG, A. THOM: *Some remarks on the entropy for algebraic actions of amenable groups*, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 367 (2015) 8579–8595.
- [24] J.P. CONZE: *Entropie d’un groupe abélien de transformations*, Z. Wahrscheinlichkeitstheorie und verwandte Gebiete 25 (1972) 11–30.
- [25] A. L. S. CORNER: *On endomorphism rings of primary Abelian groups*, Quart. J. Math. Oxford (2) 20 (1969) 277–296.
- [26] U. DARDANO, D. DIKRANJAN, S. RINAURO: *Inertial properties in groups*, Int. J. Group Theory 7 (2018) 17–62.
- [27] U. DARDANO, D. DIKRANJAN, L. SALCE: *Uniformly inert subgroups*, submitted.
- [28] U. DARDANO, S. RINAURO: *On soluble groups whose subnormal subgroups are inert*, Int. J. Group Theory 4 (2015) 17–24.
- [29] P. DE LA HARPE: *Uniform growth in groups of exponential growth*, Geom. Dedicata 95 (2002) 1–17.
- [30] C. DENINGER: *Fuglede-Kadison determinants and entropy for actions of discrete amenable groups*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. 19 (2006) 737–758.
- [31] D. DIKRANJAN: *A uniform approach to chaos*, Algebra meets Topology: Advances and Applications 19–23 July 2010 Barcelona (Spain), <http://atlas-conferences.com/cgi-bin/abstract/cbah-54>.
- [32] D. DIKRANJAN, A. FORNASIERO, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Algebraic entropy for amenable semigroup actions*, submitted.
- [33] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *The Pinsker subgroup of an algebraic flow*, J. Pure Appl. Algebra 216 (2012) 364–376.
- [34] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Limit free computation of entropy*, Rend. Istit. Mat. Univ. Trieste 44 (2012) 297–312.
- [35] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Topological entropy and algebraic entropy for group endomorphisms*, Proceedings ICTA2011 4–10 July 2011 Islamabad (Pakistan), Cambridge Scientific Publishers (2012) 133–214.
- [36] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *The connection between topological and algebraic entropy*, Topology Appl. 159 (2012) 2980–2989.
- [37] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Entropy in a category*, Appl. Categ. Structures 21 (2013) 67–101.
- [38] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Discrete dynamical systems in group theory*, Note Mat. 33 (2013) 1–48.
- [39] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *The Bridge Theorem for totally disconnected LCA groups*, Topology Appl. 169 (2014) 21–32.
- [40] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Entropy on abelian groups*, Adv. Math. 298 (2016) 612–653.
- [41] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO, L. SALCE: *Adjoint algebraic entropy*, J. Algebra 324 (2010) 442–463.
- [42] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO, L. SALCE, S. VIRILI: *Fully inert subgroups*, J. Group Theory 16 (2013) 915–939.

- [43] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO, L. SALCE, S. VIRILI: *Intrinsic algebraic entropy*, J. Pure Appl. Algebra 219 (2015) 2933–2961.
- [44] D. DIKRANJAN, A. GIORDANO BRUNO, S. VIRILI: *Strings of group endomorphisms*, J. Algebra Appl. 9 (2010) 933–958.
- [45] D. DIKRANJAN, B. GOLDSMITH, L. SALCE, P. ZANARDO: *Algebraic entropy for abelian groups*, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 361 (2009) 3401–3434.
- [46] D. DIKRANJAN, K. GONG, P. ZANARDO: *Endomorphisms of abelian groups with small algebraic entropy*, Linear Algebra Appl. 439 (2013) 1894–1904.
- [47] D. DIKRANJAN, H.-P. KÜNZI: *Uniform entropy vs topological entropy*, Topol. Algebra Appl. 3 (2015) 104–114.
- [48] D. DIKRANJAN, L. SALCE, P. ZANARDO: *Fully inert subgroups of free Abelian groups*, Period. Math. Hungar. 69 (2014) 69–78.
- [49] D. DIKRANJAN, M. SANCHIS: *Dimension and entropy in compact topological groups*, J. Math. Anal. Appl. 476 (2019) 337–366.
- [50] D. DIKRANJAN, M. SANCHIS, S. VIRILI: *New and old facts about entropy in uniform spaces and topological groups*, Topology Appl. 159 (2012) 1916–1942.
- [51] E. I. DINABURG: *The relation between topological entropy and metric entropy*, Soviet. Math. Dokl. 11 (1970) 13–16.
- [52] R. ELLIS: *Universal minimal sets*, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. 11 (1960) 540–543.
- [53] R. ENGELKING: *General Topology*, Heldermann Verlag, Berlin, 1989.
- [54] G. EVEREST, T. WARD: *Heights of polynomials and entropy in algebraic dynamics*, Universitext, Springer-Verlag London Ltd., London, 1999.
- [55] M. FEKETE: *Über die Verteilung der Wurzeln bei gewisser algebraischen Gleichungen mit ganzzahligen Koeffizienten*, Math. Z. 17 (1923) 228–249.
- [56] E. GHYS, R. LANGEVIN, P. WALCZAK: *Entropie géométrique des feuilletages*, Acta Math. 160 (1988) 105–142.
- [57] A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Algebraic entropy of shift endomorphisms on products*, Comm. Algebra 38 (2010) 4155–4174.
- [58] A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Adjoint entropy vs Topological entropy*, Topology Appl. 159 (2012) 2404–2419.
- [59] A. GIORDANO BRUNO: *Entropy for automorphisms of totally disconnected locally compact groups*, Topology Proc. 45 (2015) 175–187.
- [60] A. GIORDANO BRUNO, L. SALCE: *A soft introduction to algebraic entropy*, Arabian J. Math. 1 (2012) 69–87.
- [61] A. GIORDANO BRUNO, M. SHLOSSBERG, D. TOLLER: *Algebraic entropy in compactly covered locally compact groups*, Topology Appl., to appear.
- [62] A. GIORDANO BRUNO, P. SPIGA: *Some properties of the growth and the algebraic entropy of group endomorphisms*, J. Group Theory 20 (2017) 763–774.
- [63] A. GIORDANO BRUNO, P. SPIGA: *Milnor-Wolf’s Theorem for the growth of group endomorphisms*, submitted.
- [64] A. GIORDANO BRUNO, S. VIRILI: *String numbers of abelian groups*, J. Algebra Appl. 11 (2012) 125–161.
- [65] A. GIORDANO BRUNO, S. VIRILI: *Algebraic Yuzvinski Formula*, J. Algebra 423 (2015) 114–147.
- [66] A. GIORDANO BRUNO, S. VIRILI: *About the Algebraic Yuzvinski Formula*, Topol. Algebra and its Appl. 3 (2015) 86–103.
- [67] A. GIORDANO BRUNO, S. VIRILI: *Topological entropy in totally disconnected locally compact groups*, Ergodic Theory Dynam. Systems 37 (2017) 2163–2186.
- [68] B. GOLDSMITH, K. GONG: *On adjoint entropy of abelian groups*, Comm. Algebra 40 (2012) 972–987.
- [69] B. GOLDSMITH, L. SALCE: *Algebraic entropies for Abelian groups with applications to the structure of their endomorphism rings: a survey*, Groups, modules, and model theory – surveys and recent developments, Springer, Cham (2017) 135–174.
- [70] B. GOLDSMITH, L. SALCE, P. ZANARDO: *Fully inert subgroups of Abelian  $p$ -groups*, J. Algebra 419 (2014) 332–349.
- [71] T. N. T. GOODMAN: *Relating topological entropy and measure entropy*, Bull. London Math. Soc. 3 (1971) 176–180.
- [72] L. W. GOODWYN: *Topological entropy bounds measure-theoretic entropy*, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. 23 (1969) 679–688.
- [73] L. W. GOODWYN: *The product theorem for topological entropy*, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 158 (1971) 445–452.
- [74] P. HALMOS: *On automorphisms of compact groups*, Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 49 (1943) 619–624.
- [75] E. HEWITT, K. A. ROSS: *Abstract harmonic analysis I*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg-New York, 1963.
- [76] J. HOFER: *Topological entropy for non-compact spaces*, Michigan J. Math. 21 (1974) 235–242.
- [77] K.H. HOFMANN, L. STOYANOV: *Topological entropy of group and semigroup actions*, Adv. Math. 115 (1995) 54–98.
- [78] B. M. HOOD: *Topological entropy and uniform spaces*, J. London Math. Soc. 8 (1974) 633–641.
- [79] D. KERR, H. LI: *Entropy and the variational principle for actions of sofic groups*, Invent. Math. 186 (2011) 501–558.
- [80] J.C. KIEFFER: *A generalized Shannon-McMillan theorem for the action of an amenable group on a probability space*, Ann. Probability 3 (1975) 1031–1037.
- [81] A.A. KIRILLOV: *Dynamical systems, factors and group representations*, Russ. Math. Surv. 22 (1967) 67–80.
- [82] A. N. KOLMOGOROV: *New metric invariants of transitive dynamical systems and automorphisms of Lebesgue spaces*, Doklady Akad. Nauk. SSSR 119 (1958) 861–864 (in Russian).
- [83] S. LEFSCHETZ: *Algebraic topology*, American Mathematical Society Colloquium Publications 27, American Mathematical Society, New York, 1942.
- [84] H. LI: *Compact group automorphisms, addition formulas and Fuglede-Kadison determinants*, Ann. of Math. (2) 176 (2012) 303–347.
- [85] H. LI, B. LIANG: *Mean dimension, mean rank, and von Neumann–Lück rank*, J. Reine Angew. Math. 739 (2018) 207–240.
- [86] D. LIND, K. SCHMIDT, T. WARD: *Mahler measure and entropy for commuting automorphisms of compact groups*, Invent. Math. 101 (1990) 593–629.
- [87] D. A. LIND, T. WARD: *Automorphisms of solenoids and  $p$ -adic entropy*, Ergod. Th. & Dynam. Sys. 8 (1988) 411–419.
- [88] M. MAJIDI-ZOLBANIN, N. MIASNIKOV, L. SZPIRO: *Entropy and flatness in local algebraic dynamics*, Publ. Mat. 57 (2013) 509–544.
- [89] D. G. NORTHCOTT, M. REUFEL: *A generalization of the concept of length*, Quart. J. of Math. Oxford (2) 16 (1965)

297–321.

- [90] J.M. OLLAGNIER: *Ergodic theory and statistical mechanics*, Lecture Notes in Math. 1115, Springer Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg-New York, 1985.
- [91] D. ORNSTEIN, B. WEISS: *Entropy and isomorphism theorems for actions of amenable groups*, J. Analyse Math. 48 (1987) 1–141.
- [92] J. PETERS: *Entropy on discrete Abelian groups*, Adv. Math. 33 (1979) 1–13.
- [93] J. PETERS: *Entropy of automorphisms on L.C.A. groups*, Pacific J. Math. 96 (1981) 475–488.
- [94] L. S. PONTRYAGIN: *Topological Groups*, Gordon and Breach, New York, 1966.
- [95] L. SALCE: *Some results on the algebraic entropy*, Groups and Model Theory, Contemp. Math. 576, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI (2012) 297–304.
- [96] L. SALCE, P. VÁMOS, S. VIRILI: *Length functions, multiplicities and algebraic entropy*, Forum Math. 25 (2013) 255–282.
- [97] L. SALCE, S. VIRILI: *The addition theorem for algebraic entropies induced by non-discrete length functions*, Forum Math. 28 (2016) 1143–1157.
- [98] L. SALCE, S. VIRILI: *Two new proofs concerning the intrinsic algebraic entropy*, Comm. Algebra 46 (2018) 3939–3949.
- [99] L. SALCE, P. ZANARDO: *Commutativity modulo small endomorphisms and endomorphisms of zero algebraic entropy*, Models, Modules and Abelian Groups, de Gruyter (2008) 487–497.
- [100] L. SALCE, P. ZANARDO: *A general notion of algebraic entropy and the rank entropy*, Forum Math. 21 (2009) 579–599.
- [101] L. SALCE, P. ZANARDO: *Abelian groups of zero adjoint entropy*, Colloq. Math. 12 (2010) 45–62.
- [102] J. SILVERMAN: *Dynamical Degree, arithmetic entropy and canonical heights for dominant rational self-maps of projective space*, Ergodic Theory Dynam. Systems 34 (2014) 647–678.
- [103] Y. G. SINAI: *On the concept of entropy of a dynamical system*, Doklady Akad. Nauk. SSSR 124 (1959) 786–781 (in Russian).
- [104] A. M. STEPIN, A. T. TAGI-ZADE: *Variational characterization of topological pressure for amenable groups of transformations*, Dokl Akad. Nauk SSSR 254 (1980) 545–549.
- [105] L. N. STOYANOV: *Uniqueness of topological entropy for endomorphisms on compact groups*, Boll. Un. Mat. Ital. B (7) 1 (1987) 829–847.
- [106] P. VÁMOS: *Additive Functions and Duality over Noetherian Rings*, Quart. J. of Math. Oxford (2) 19 (1968) 43–55.
- [107] P. VÁMOS: *Length Functions on Modules*, Ph.D. Thesis, University of Sheffield (1968).
- [108] S. VIRILI: *Algebraic  $i$ -entropies*, Master Thesis, University of Padova (2010).
- [109] S. VIRILI: *Entropy for endomorphisms of LCA groups*, Topology Appl. 159 (2012) 2546–2556.
- [110] S. VIRILI: *Algebraic and topological entropy of group actions*, preprint.
- [111] S. VIRILI: *Algebraic entropy of amenable group actions*, Math. Z. 291 (2019) 1389–1417.
- [112] P. WALTERS: *An Introduction to Ergodic Theory*, Graduate Texts in Mathematics 79, Springer-Verlag, New York-Berlin, 1982.
- [113] M. D. WEISS: *Algebraic and other entropies of group endomorphisms*, Math. Systems Theory 8 (1974/75) 243–248.
- [114] B. WEISS: *Entropy and actions of sofic groups*, Discrete Contin. Dyn. Syst. Ser. B 20 (2015) 3375–3383.
- [115] G. A. WILLIS: *The structure of totally disconnected locally compact groups*, Math. Ann. 300 (1994) 341–363.
- [116] G. A. WILLIS: *Further properties of the scale function on a totally disconnected group*, J. Algebra 237 (2001) 142–164.
- [117] S. YUZVINSKIĬ: *Metric properties of endomorphisms of compact groups*, Izv. Acad. Nauk SSSR, Ser. Mat. 29 (1965) 1295–1328 (in Russian); Engl. Transl.: Amer. Math. Soc. Transl. (2) 66 (1968) 63–98.
- [118] S. A. YUZVINSKIĬ: *Calculation of the entropy of a group-endomorphism*, Sibirsk. Mat. Ž. 8 (1967) 230–239.
- [119] P. ZANARDO: *Algebraic entropy of endomorphisms over local one-dimensional domains*, J. Algebra Appl. 8 (2009) 759–777.
- [120] P. ZANARDO: *Multiplicative invariants and length functions over valuation domains*, J. Commut. Algebra 3 (2011) 561–587.

# Index

- Addition Theorem, 3
- adjoint algebraic  $i$ -entropy, 35
- adjoint algebraic entropy, 34
- algebraic  $i$ -entropy, 33
- algebraic dimension entropy, 36
- algebraic entropy, 31
- arithmetic norm, 9
  
- backward generalized shift, 21
- Bernoulli shift, 16, 21, 32
- bounded norm, 9
- Bridge Theorem, 6
  
- compatible preorder, 10
- conjugate morphisms, 4
- Continuity for direct/inverse limits, 13, 20
- contractive semigroup homomorphism, 9
- contrajectory, 34
- contravariant set-theoretic entropy, 25
- covariant set-theoretic entropy, 24
  
- d-monotone norm, 11
  
- entropy, 4
- entropy function, 4
  
- factor flow, 4
- Fekete Lemma, 9
- flow, 4
- forward generalized shift, 23
- frame, 29
- frame entropy, 29
- functorial entropy, 18
  
- Invariance under conjugation, 12, 18
- Invariance under inversion, 13, 19
- isomorphic flows, 4
  
- left Bernoulli shift, 21
- locally quasi-periodic flow, 15
- Logarithmic Law, 13, 19
  
- measure entropy, 30
- monoid norm, 9
- monotone map, 10
- monotone norm, 10
  
- Monotonicity for factors, 12, 19
- Monotonicity for subflows, 12, 19
  
- norm, 9
- normed monoid, 9
- normed preordered semigroup, 10
- normed presemilattice, 10
- normed semigroup, 9
- normed semilattice, 10
- normed subsemigroup, 9
  
- one-sided left Bernoulli shift, 21
- one-sided right Bernoulli shift, 32
  
- positive cone, 10
- preordered semigroup, 10
- presemilattice, 10
  
- quasi-periodic flow, 14
  
- right Bernoulli shift, 32
  
- semigroup entropy, 11
- semigroup norm, 9
- semilattice, 10
- Strong Bridge Theorem, 38
- subadditive monoid, 9
- subadditive norm, 9
- subadditive semigroup, 9
- subflow, 4
  
- topological dimension entropy, 37
- topological entropy, 26
- trajectory, 11
- two-sided left Bernoulli shift, 21
- two-sided right Bernoulli shift, 21
  
- uniform isomorphism, 37
- Uniqueness Theorem, 3
  
- Vanishing on quasi-periodic flows, 14, 19
  
- weak Addition Theorem, 14, 16, 20
- weak isomorphism, 38
  
- Yuzvinski's formula, 3

# List of Symbols

<b>Flow<math>_{\mathfrak{X}}</math></b>	category of flows of $\mathfrak{X}$ . . . . .	4
<b>Mod<math>_R</math></b>	category of modules over the ring $R$ . . . . .	4
$\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$	set of non-negative reals . . . . .	4
$\mathbb{R}_+$	set of positive reals . . . . .	4
<b>Mes</b>	category of probability measure spaces and measure preserving transformations . . . . .	5
<b>Top</b>	category of topological spaces and continuous maps . . . . .	5
<b>Top<math>_0</math></b>	category of $T_0$ topological spaces and continuous maps . . . . .	5
<b>Top<math>_1</math></b>	category of $T_1$ topological spaces and continuous maps . . . . .	5
<b>CTop</b>	category of compact topological spaces and continuous maps . . . . .	5
<b>CTop<math>_2</math></b>	category of compact Hausdorff spaces and continuous maps . . . . .	5
<b>LPG</b>	category of linearly topologized precompact groups and continuous homomorphisms . . . . .	5
<b>TdCG</b>	category of totally disconnected compact groups and continuous homomorphisms . . . . .	5
<b>Frm</b>	category of frames and frame homomorphisms . . . . .	5
<b>Grp</b>	category of groups and group homomorphisms . . . . .	5
<b>LCG</b>	category of locally compact groups and continuous homomorphisms . . . . .	5
<b>LCA</b>	category of locally compact abelian groups and continuous homomorphisms . . . . .	5
<b>CAG</b>	category of compact abelian groups and continuous homomorphisms . . . . .	5
<b>TdCAG</b>	category of totally disconnected compact abelian groups and continuous homomorphisms . . . . .	5
<b>AG</b>	category of abelian groups and group homomorphisms . . . . .	5
<b>TAG</b>	category of torsion abelian groups and group homomorphisms . . . . .	5
<b>Mod<math>_R</math></b>	category of right modules over a ring $R$ and $R$ -module homomorphisms . . . . .	5
<b>Mod<math>_{\mathbb{K}}</math></b>	category of discrete vector spaces over a field $\mathbb{K}$ and linear transformations . . . . .	5
<b>LCVect<math>_{\mathbb{K}}</math></b>	category of linearly compact vector spaces over a discrete field $\mathbb{K}$ and continuous linear transformations . . . . .	5
<b>Set</b>	category of sets and maps . . . . .	5
<b>Set<math>_{\text{fin}}</math></b>	category of sets and finite-to-one maps . . . . .	5
$\widehat{G}$	Pontryagin dual group of a locally compact abelian group $G$ . . . . .	6
$BT_{\varepsilon, C}$	Bridge Theorem with respect to the functor $\varepsilon$ with constant $C > 0$ . . . . .	6
$BT_{\varepsilon}$	Bridge Theorem with respect to the functor $\varepsilon$ with coefficient 1 . . . . .	6
$\mathbb{Z}$	set of integers . . . . .	9
$\mathbb{N}$	set of natural numbers . . . . .	9
$\mathbb{N}_+$	set of positive integers . . . . .	9
$\mathfrak{S}^*$	category of normed semigroups and semigroup homomorphisms . . . . .	9
$\mathfrak{S}$	category of normed semigroups and contractive semigroup homomorphisms . . . . .	9
$\mathfrak{M}$	category of normed monoids and contractive monoid homomorphisms . . . . .	9
$\mathfrak{S}^\dagger$	category of subadditive semigroups and contractive semigroup homomorphisms . . . . .	9
$\mathfrak{M}^\dagger$	category of subadditive monoids and contractive monoid homomorphisms . . . . .	9
$P_+(S)$	positive cone . . . . .	10
$\leq^d$	intrinsic preorder of a commutative monoid . . . . .	10
$\mathfrak{S}_p$	category of normed preordered semigroups and monotone semigroup homomorphisms . . . . .	10
$\mathfrak{M}_p$	category of normed preordered monoids and monotone monoid homomorphisms . . . . .	10
$\mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}$	category of normed presemilattices and monotone monoid homomorphisms . . . . .	10
$\mathfrak{L}$	category of semilattices and semilattice homomorphisms . . . . .	11
$\mathfrak{S}_p^\dagger$	category of preordered subadditive semigroups and monotone semigroup homomorphisms . . . . .	11
$\mathfrak{M}_p^\dagger$	category of preordered subadditive monoids and monotone monoid homomorphisms . . . . .	11
$\mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$	category of subadditive presemilattices and monotone monoid homomorphisms . . . . .	11
$\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$	category of subadditive semilattices and semilattice homomorphisms . . . . .	11
$T_n(\phi, x)$	$n$ -th $\phi$ -trajectory of $x \in S$ . . . . .	11
$h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\phi, x)$	semigroup entropy of $\phi$ with respect to $x \in S$ . . . . .	11
$h_{\mathfrak{S}^*}(\phi)$	semigroup entropy of $\phi$ . . . . .	11
$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi, x)$	semigroup entropy of $\phi$ with respect to $x \in S$ in $\mathfrak{S}$ . . . . .	11
$h_{\mathfrak{S}}(\phi)$	semigroup entropy of $\phi$ in $\mathfrak{S}$ . . . . .	11
$\beta_M$	right Bernoulli shift . . . . .	16
${}_M\beta$	left Bernoulli shift . . . . .	16
$\mathbf{h}_F(\phi)$	functorial entropy of $\phi$ . . . . .	18
$\mathbf{H}_F(\phi, x)$	functorial entropy of $\phi$ with respect to $x$ . . . . .	18
${}_K\beta$	(one-sided) left Bernoulli shift . . . . .	21
${}_K\tilde{\beta}$	(two-sided) left Bernoulli shift . . . . .	21
$\tilde{\beta}_K$	(two-sided) right Bernoulli shift . . . . .	21
$\sigma_\lambda$	backward generalized shift . . . . .	21
$\mathcal{B}_K$	functor of the backward generalized shift . . . . .	22
$\tau_\lambda$	forward generalized shift . . . . .	23
$\mathcal{F}_K$	functor of the forward generalized shift . . . . .	23
$\mathcal{S}(X)$	family of all finite subsets of a set $X$ . . . . .	24
$\mathfrak{h}$	covariant set-theoretic entropy . . . . .	24
$\text{im}$	functor $\text{im} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . . . . .	24
$\mathfrak{h}^*$	contravariant set-theoretic entropy . . . . .	25

<b>cim</b>	functor $\mathbf{cim} : \mathbf{Set}_{\mathbf{fin}} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}^*$ . . . . .	25
$\mathbf{cov}(X)$	family of all open covers $\mathcal{U}$ of a topological space $X$ . . . . .	26
$h_{top}$	topological entropy . . . . .	26
<b>cov</b>	functor $\mathbf{cov} : \mathbf{CTop} \rightarrow \mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . . . . .	26
$\mathbf{fin-cov}(X)$	family of all finite open covers of a topological space $X$ . . . . .	28
$h_{\mathbf{fin-top}}(\phi)$	topological entropy . . . . .	28
<b>fin-cov</b>	functor $\mathbf{fin-cov} : \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . . . . .	28
$\mathcal{O}(X)$	family of all open sets of a topological space $X$ . . . . .	29
<b>Frm</b>	category of frames and frame homomorphisms . . . . .	29
$\mathbf{fin-cov}_{fr}$	functor $\mathbf{fin-cov}_{fr} : \mathbf{Frm} \rightarrow \mathfrak{P}\mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . . . . .	29
$h_{fr}$	frame entropy . . . . .	29
$\mathfrak{P}(X)$	family of measurable partitions of a probability measure space $X$ . . . . .	30
$h_{mes}$	measure entropy . . . . .	30
<b>mes</b>	functor $\mathbf{mes} : \mathbf{MesSp} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . . . . .	30
$\mathcal{H}(G)$	family of all finite non-empty subsets of a group $G$ . . . . .	30
$\mathcal{F}(G)$	family of all finite subgroups of a group $G$ . . . . .	30
$h_{alg}$	algebraic entropy . . . . .	31
<b>ent</b>	algebraic entropy . . . . .	31
<b>sub</b>	functor $\mathbf{sub} : \mathbf{AG} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . . . . .	31
<b>pet</b>	functor $\mathbf{pet} : \mathbf{Grp} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}_p^\dagger$ . . . . .	32
$\beta_G^\oplus$	(one-sided) right Bernoulli shift of a group $G$ . . . . .	32
$\bar{\beta}_G^\oplus$	(two-sided) right Bernoulli shift of a group $G$ . . . . .	32
$\mathbf{ent}_i$	algebraic $i$ -entropy . . . . .	33
$\mathbf{sub}_i$	functor $\mathbf{sub}_i : \mathbf{Mod}_R \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . . . . .	33
$\mathcal{C}(G)$	family of all finite index subgroups of a group $G$ . . . . .	34
$\mathbf{ent}^*$	adjoint algebraic entropy . . . . .	34
$\mathbf{sub}^*$	functor $\mathbf{sub}^* : \mathbf{Grp} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . . . . .	34
$\mathbf{ent}_i^*$	adjoint algebraic $i$ -entropy . . . . .	35
$\mathbf{fin-cov}_s(G)$	family of the finite open covers $\{\mathcal{U}_V : V \in \mathcal{V}_G(1)\}$ of a linearly topologized precompact group $G$ . . . . .	35
$\mathbf{sub}_o^*$	functor $\mathbf{sub}_o^* : \mathbf{LPG} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . . . . .	36
$\mathbf{ent}_{\dim}$	algebraic dimension entropy . . . . .	36
$\mathbf{sub}_{\dim}$	functor $\mathbf{sub}_{\dim} : \mathbf{Mod}_{\mathbb{K}} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . . . . .	36
$\mathbf{ent}_{\dim}^*$	topological dimension entropy . . . . .	37
$\mathbf{sub}_{\dim}^*$	functor $\mathbf{sub}_{\dim}^* : \mathbf{LCVect}_{\mathbb{K}} \rightarrow \mathfrak{L}^\dagger$ . . . . .	37
$SBT_{\varepsilon, C}$	Strong Bridge Theorem with respect to the functor $\varepsilon$ with coefficient $C > 0$ . . . . .	38
$SBT_{\varepsilon, C}^w$	Strong <sup>w</sup> Bridge Theorem with respect to the functor $\varepsilon$ with coefficient $C > 0$ . . . . .	38
$SBT_{\varepsilon}$	Strong Bridge Theorem with respect to the functor $\varepsilon$ with coefficient 1 . . . . .	38
$SBT_{\varepsilon}^w$	Strong <sup>w</sup> Bridge Theorem with respect to the functor $\varepsilon$ with coefficient 1 . . . . .	38
<b>CG</b>	category of all compact Hausdorff groups and continuous homomorphisms . . . . .	40
$\mathbf{CG}_e$	subcategory of <b>CG</b> with morphisms all continuous surjective homomorphisms . . . . .	40
<b>Top<sub>1</sub></b>	category of $T_1$ topological spaces and continuous maps . . . . .	41
<b>CTG</b>	category of compact topological groups and continuous homomorphisms . . . . .	41
<b>RFAG</b>	category of residually finite abelian groups and group homomorphisms . . . . .	41
$h_{top}$	topological entropy . . . . .	47
<b>lctop</b>	functor $\mathbf{lctop} : \mathbf{LCG} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}^*$ . . . . .	47
$h_{alg}$	algebraic entropy . . . . .	47
<b>lcalg</b>	functor $\mathbf{lcalg} : \mathbf{LCG} \rightarrow \mathfrak{S}^*$ . . . . .	48
<b>TdLCA</b>	category of totally disconnected locally compact abelian groups and continuous homomorphisms . . . . .	48
<b>CcLCA</b>	category of compactly covered locally compact abelian groups and continuous homomorphisms . . . . .	48